

*“Heroes Theological College” “Knowledge Is Power”*

**STUDENT  
SECOND YEAR MANUAL  
HEROES THEOLOGICAL  
COLLEGE**

## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

### **I. New Believers Training Manual**

Introduction / the Books of the Bible

### **II. Topical Concordance**

**A: The Bible - The Inerrant, Infallible, Inspired Word Of God**

**B: God The Father, Son And Holy Spirit C: Spirit**

**Beings D: Sin/Man**

**E: Salvation (Redemption)**

**F: Church**

**G: Growing In Christ**

**H: Death And End times I: Other**

**Topics Of Importance**

### **III. Leaders Training Guide**

#### **A. LEADERS BASIC TRAINING**

**A1: How To Train Church Leaders.....A-1 A2:**

**Training Leaders To Do Nine Things.....A-12 A3: The Use And**

**Abuse Of Authority.....A-86**

**A4: Establishing A Devotional Habit.....A-107**

**A5: How To Be A Prayer Warrior.....A-133**

#### **B. VICTORIOUS CHRISTIAN LEADERSHIP**

**B1: Victorious Christian Living .....B-1**

**B2: Keys To Spiritual Authority.....B-39**

#### **C. WHAT LEADERS NEED TO KNOW ABOUT....**

**C1: The Canon Of Scripture.....C-1**

**C2: The Church Worldwide.....C-11**

**C3: Why God Made Man.....C-16**

**C4: Signs And Wonders Today.....C-18**

**C5: The Five Leadership Gifts.....C-37**

**C6: The Restoration Of The Church.....C-40**

**C7: Doctrine Of Eternal Security.....C-55**

**C8: Tithing / Giving.....C-67**

**C9: Women In Ministry.....C-70**

**C10: The Seven Feasts Of The Lord.....C-93**

C11: The 500 Years Between Testaments.....	C-141
<b>D. HOW LEADERS CAN...</b>	
D1: Receive Baptism In & Gifts Of The Holy Spirit..	D-1
D2; Learn To Judge Prophecy.....	D-26
D3: Make Their Faith Grow.....	D-29
D4: Use Power Of Faith Confession.....	D-42
D5: Heal Sick Bodies.....	D-45
D6: Heal The Wounded Soul.....	D-73
D7: Avoid Presumption In Healing.....	D-88
D8: Avoid Extremes In Healing.....	D-92
D9: Cast Out Demons.....	D-101
D10: Use Spiritual Weapons.....	D-122
D11: Trust God For Money.....	D-127
D12: Obtain God's Guidance.....	D-131
D13: Prepare A Sermon / Bible Study.....	D-137
<b>E. HOW JESUS BUILDS HIS CHURCH THROUGH...</b>	
E1: The Three Parts Of The Church.....	E-1 Part
1: The Foundation Of The Church.....	E-1
Part 2: The Leaders Of The Church.....	E-27
Part 3: Ministries Of The Church Members.....	E-45
E2: Praise And Worship.....	E-65
E3: Breaking The Babylonian Barrier .....	E-102
E4: Learning How To Win Souls .....	E-112
E5: Giving Instructions To New Converts.....	E-146
E6: Planning For Church Growth.....	E-165
E7: Conserving The Harvest.....	E-199
<b>F. REWARDS/JUDGMENTS</b>	
F1: God's Certificate Of Approval.....	F-1
F2: Crowns/Rewards.....	F-15
F3; Judgment Of Lawless Workers.....	F-19
<b>G. ESCHATOLOGY</b>	
G1: Last Things.....	G-1
G2: Adoption.....	G-7

## **NEW BELIEVERS BIBLE STUDY**

*Introduction / The Books of the Bible*

*Chapter 1 - The Bible is the Word of God*

*Chapter 2 - God*

*Chapter 3 - Man and Satan Chapter 4 -*

*Jesus*

*Chapter 5 - The Cross*

*Chapter 6 - The Blood of Christ*

**Chapter 7 - The Resurrection Chapter 8 -  
Repentance**

**Chapter 9 - Faith**

**Chapter 10 - Grace**

**Chapter 11 - Water Baptism**

**Chapter 12 - The Holy Spirit**

**Chapter 13 - Temptation Chapter 14 -  
Fellowship**

**Chapter 15 - Generosity**

**Chapter 16 - Kingdom Living**

**Chapter 17 - Worship**

**Chapter 18 - Prayer**

**Chapter 19 - Heaven**

**Chapter 20 - When Jesus Returns – the Second Coming Chapter 21 - Call  
of God**

## **What the Bible Teaches**

### **Chapter 1**

## **The Bible Is the Word of God**

### **A. GOD’S SPECIAL BOOK**

The Word of God – the Holy Bible – is God’s special book. It is not like other books, but is a supernatural book. It was written by many different people, who wrote by the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, See 2 Timothy 3:16.

The Bible is the world’s best seller. It consistently outsells any other book. The Bible has been translated into more languages than any other book in the world. It was originally written in three languages – Hebrew, Aramaic and Greek. The Bible you have has been translated by dedicated people so that you can have God’s words, thoughts and plans.

The Bible is also one of the oldest books in the world. The most ancient portions of the Bible date back almost 4,000 years. Yet it is still the most modern book in the world today; for in it we find the answers to life’s greatest questions:

- “Where did I come from?”
- “Why am I here?”
- “Where will I Go?”

Even though the Bible is made up of 66 smaller books, it has only one central theme: God’s loving plan to rescue mankind.

At the front of the Bible you will find a list of the 66 books that can be found in the Bible. The Bible is divided into two sections:

- The Old Testament and
- The New Testament.

The Old Testament tells us about God’s work with His people before the birth of Jesus. The New Testament tells us about Jesus’ birth, His life, His great ministry of healing and forgiveness for sick and sinful people, His death on the cross, His being raised from the dead and His ascension (going back to Heaven).

It also tells us about the continuation of His healing, forgiving ministry through those who saw Him after His resurrection. Those who follow Jesus’ teaching do many miraculous works just as He said they would. See John 14:12.

The teaching of those who saw Him after He was raised from the dead is contained in the Epistles (Letters). These were written within the first fifty years after Jesus’ resurrection. These make up about half of the New Testament.

## **B. STUDY THE BIBLE**

The most important relationship you can have in this life is with God. Through reading the Bible you come to understand what God is like – His thoughts, His plans, and His promises for you.

The list (index) in the front of the Bible will help you find the page number of the part of the Bible you may wish to study.

To help you find specific parts of the Bible, the translators organized the text into:

- Books,
- Chapters within the Books, and
- Verses within the Chapters.

For example, if you see a reference like “Genesis 3:15”, this would mean

- The Book of Genesis.
- Chapter three, and
- Verse fifteen.

## **C. HERE IS THE WORLD’S GREATEST PROMISE**

*“For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life” John 3:16*

## **D. THE PURPOSE OF THE WORD OF GOD**

*“...the holy Scriptures...Are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus. All Scripture God-breathed and is useful for teaching, rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness” 2Timothy 3:15-16*

*“His divine power has given us everything we need for life and godliness through our knowledge of him who called us by his own glory and goodness. Through these he has given us his very great and precious promises, so that through them you might partake of the divine Nature and escape the corruption in the world caused by evil desires” 2Peter 1:3-4*

## **E. THE WORD OF GOD PRODUCES LIFE**

*“The words I have spoken unto you are spirit and they are life” John 6:63*

### **1. It Is Creative**

*“By the WORD OF THE LORD were the heavens made, their starry host by the breath of his mouth ... For he spoke and it came to be; He commanded, and it stood firm”*  
Psalms 33:6,9 See also Hebrews 11:3.

## **F. THE WORD OF GOD IS LIKE WATER**

### **1. It Cleanses**

We start life in the Kingdom of God totally “washed clean” by the Word of God.  
*“You are already clean because of the word I have spoken to you”* John 15:3 see also  
Ephesians 5:25-27.

### **2. It Keeps Us Clean**

The Word of God, planted in our hearts, keeps us free from sin.  
*“How can a young man keep his way pure? By living according to your word ... I have hidden your word in my heart that I might not sin against you”* Psalms 119:9,11

## **G. THE WORD OF GOD IS LIGHT FOR OUR LIVES.**

*“And we have the word of the prophets made more certain, and you will do well to pay attention to it, as to a light shining in a dark place, until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your hearts”* 2Peter 1:19 **1. It Gives Understanding In A Dark World**

*“...The commands of the Lord are radiant, giving light to the eyes”* Psalms 19:8  
*“Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path ... The entrance of your word gives light; it gives understanding to the simple”* Psalms 119:105,130

## **H. THE WORD OF GOD IS SPIRITUAL FOOD.**

*“Jesus answered, It is written: ‘Man does not live on bread alone, but on every word that comes from the mouth of God’”* Matthew 4:4

### **1. It Causes Spiritual Growth**

*“Brothers, I could not address you as spiritual but as worldly – mere infants in Christ. I gave you milk, not solid food, for you were not ready for it...”* 1Corinthians 3:1,2  
*“Like new-born babies, crave pure spiritual milk, so that by it you may grow up in your salvation”* 1Peter 2:2

God’s aim for each of us is expressed in Ephesians 4:12-15:

*“...that the body of Christ may be built up until we all reach unity in the faith and in the knowledge of the Son of God and become mature, attaining to the whole measure of the fullness of Christ.”*

## **I. THE WORD OF GOD IS SEED.**

In Luke 8:14-15, Jesus told His disciples the parable of the sower.

In verse 11 He said: *“The seed is the word of God.”* God’s will for our lives is fruitfulness,  
Psalms 1:3.

*“Now he who supplies seed to the sower and bread for food will also supply and increase your store of seed and will enlarge the harvest of your righteousness” 2Corinthians 9:10*

#### **J. THE WORD OF GOD IS LIKE A SWORD.**

*“Take...the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God” Ephesians 6:17 See also Hebrews 4:12.*

Note that Jesus used the word “sword” against Satan in His temptation in the wilderness, Luke 4:1-14, giving us an example of how we can use the Word of God in our own times of temptation.

#### **K. THE WORD OF GOD HELPS US PRAY.**

*“If you remain in me and my words remain in you, ask whatever you wish, and it will be Given you” John 15:7*

‘Ask whatever you wish’ literally means to ‘ask as one who has the right – with authority (to command).

#### **Now the creative word is in OUR MOUTH! L. THE WORD OF GOD IS STRONG IN US.**

*“Therefore everyone who hears these words of mine and puts them in to practice is like a wise man who built his house on the rock. The rain came down, the streams rose, and the winds blew and beat against the house; yet it did not fall, because it had its foundations on the rock” Matthew 7:24, 25 See also verses 26,27.*

Jesus said that the wise man who built his house on the rock was a picture of those who hear His Word and obey it. The Word of God builds ‘inner concrete’ within our lives so that no matter what may come against us we will stand strong.

## **Chapter 2**

# **God**

God is far too great for us to fully understand. He has no beginning and He has no end. There is no place where His presence is not felt. The Bible asks in Job 11:7: *“Can you fathom the mysteries of God? Can you probe the limits of the Almighty?”*

God lives in Heaven and He rules over the whole earth. The Bible tells us: *“this is what the Lord says: ‘Heaven is my throne and the earth is my footstool...’”* Isaiah 66:1 *“God reigns over the nations; God is seated on his holy throne”* Psalms 47:8 In this study we are going to be looking at special truths about God. These are facts about God’s unchanging character. Through these you will understand more of what God is like. You will come to understand God and how He cares for you personally. **A. WHAT IS GOD LIKE?**

#### **1. God Is The Creator Of Everything**

*“You alone are the Lord. You made the heavens, and all their starry host, the earth and all that is on it, the seas and all that is in them. You give life to everything, and the multitudes of heaven worship you”* Nehemiah 9:6

*“For you created my inmost being; you knit me together in my mothers womb”* Psalms 139:13

## **2. God Is All-Powerful**

*“...For who hath resisted His will? Hath not the potter power over the clay...?”* Romans 9:19-21

*“Yours, O Lord, is the greatness and the power and the glory and the majesty and the splendour, for everything in heaven and earth is yours. Yours, O Lord, is the kingdom; you are exalted as head over all”* 1Chronicles 29:11

*“Now to him who is able to do immeasurably more than all we ask or imagine, according to his power that is at work within us”* Ephesians 3:20

## **3. God Is All-Knowing**

*“Nothing in all creation is hidden from God’s sight. Everything is uncovered and laid bare before the eyes of him to whom we must give account”* Hebrews 4:13      *“...God is greater than our hearts, and he knows everything”* 1John 3:20

**4. God Is Holy**  
*“There is no one holy like the Lord; there is no one besides you; there is no Rock like our God”* 1Samuel 2:2

## **5. God Is A Spirit**

*“God is a Spirit, and his worshipers must worship in spirit and in truth”* John 4:24

## **6. God Is A Person You Can Know**

*“Come near to God, and he will come near to you...”* James 4:8

*“The Lord is near to all who call on him, to all who call on him in truth”* Psalms 145:18

## **7. God Is A Loving Father**

*“How great is the love the Father has lavished on us, that we should be called children of God! And that is what we are...!”* 1John 3:1

## **B. GOD IS TOO GREAT TO LIVE IN TEMPLES**

*“The God who made the world and everything in it is the Lord of heaven and earth and does not live in temples built by hands. And he is not served by human hands, as if he needed anything, because he himself gives all men life and breath and everything else...’For in him we live and move and have our being.’ As some of your own poets have said, ‘We are his offspring’”* Acts 17:24,25,28

## **C. WE ARE**

### **1. Created By God**

*“I praise you because I am fearfully and wonderfully made; your works are wonderful, I know that full well. My frame was not hidden from you when I was made in the secret place.*

*“When I was woven together in the depths of the earth, your eyes saw my unformed body. All the days ordained for me were written in your book before one of them came to be”* Psalms 139:14-16

### **2. Owned By God**

*“Do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, who is in you, whom you received from God? You are not your own: you were bought with a price. Therefore honour God with your body”*

1Corinthians 6:19,20

### **3. Called To Worship God**

*“You are worthy, our Lord and God, to receive glory and honour and power, for you created all things, and by your will they were created and have their being”* Revelation 4:11

### **D. MAKE A DECISION.**

Jesus said, *“Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind”* Matthew 22:37

The Bible tells us about a man called Joshua. He was a great leader of the Nation of Israel. The people had been wandering for forty years in the wilderness, without a land of their own. Joshua, under God’s direction, led them in victory against the evil nations living in Canaan, and possessed their land for the homeless nation of Israel. Joshua challenged all the people to make a decision:

*“ ...choose for yourselves this day whom you will serve, whether the gods your forefathers served beyond the River, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land you are living. BUT AS FOR ME AND MY HOUSEHOLD, WE WILL SERVE THE LORD”* Joshua 24:15

The same challenge comes to each of us. Will you make the same commitment as Joshua this day?

### **MY COMMITMENT**

**This day I give my worship to the only true God of heaven and earth, and surrender my will, my life and possessions to Him. From this day I determine never to worship any other gods. My worship is for Him only, and I will teach others the truths about God.**

### **A FINAL WORD**

Remember the law of multiplying the Kingdom of God. It is your turn to teach someone else about God and teach them to teach another person. Just share what you know.

## **Chapter 3**

# **Man and Satan**

## **A. MAN – THE IMAGE OF GOD – MADE TO HAVE DOMINION**

God had a very real reason for creating man (male and female). He had a wonderful plan and purpose for them. Because God is Love, He desired to have beings of like-mind and likeheart with whom He could share His life ... all that He is and all He is involved with ... who would rule the heavens and the earth with him like sons. So He created man – in His own image.

*“Then God said, ‘Let us make man in our image, in our likeness, and let them rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air, over the livestock, over all the earth, and over all the creatures that move along the ground.’ So God created man in his own image, in the image of God he created him; male and female he created them”* Genesis

1:26-27

## **B. LUCIFER**

God created many wonderful things before He created the heavens and the earth. Among them were the angels – spirit beings whose purpose is to fulfil God’s will. Angels worship God and serve Him continually. Revelation 5:11-14.

However, Lucifer, one of the great leading angels, rebelled against God. He wanted the position and authority of God. He wanted to rule all creation from above God’s throne in heaven.

When Lucifer rebelled, God cast him out of Heaven. At the same time, one-third of the angels joined in his rebellion and were cast out with Lucifer. Revelation 12:4. *“How you have fallen from heaven, O morning star [Lucifer], son of the dawn! You have been cast down to the earth, you who once led low the nations! “You said in your heart, ‘I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars of God; I will sit enthroned on the mount of assembly, on the utmost heights of the sacred mountain. I will ascend above the tops of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High”*” Isaiah 14:12-14

Lucifer was cast to the earth, where he is known as ‘Satan’ or ‘The Devil.’ Separated from the glory of the Creator God, he lost the beauty and light he once had, Ezekiel 28:11-17 and became evil and full of darkness.

The angels who fell with him also lost their glory and became evil spirits, in God’s newly created world. But Satan’s evil ambition did not change and so he set about with another plan to try and usurp (unlawfully take) God’s Throne ... he went after the man God had created.

### **C. THE TEMPTATION**

God gave His first man and woman (Adam and Eve) authority over all the earth, and told them keep it under His dominion.

To keep them safe from Satan and his evil spirits, God planted two special trees in the garden where Adam and Eve lived. God called the “The Tree of Life” and “The Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil” See Genesis 2:9, 17.

The Tree of life represented the Life and authority of God Himself – so in eating its fruit, Adam and Eve would be filled more and more with God’s strength and love and glory. The Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil represented Satan’s life and authority, and as long as Adam and Eve did not eat its fruit they were safe from the evil spirits which filled the earth. The dominion of the whole creation would always be theirs if they obeyed their loving Creator God. Hebrews 2:8.

*“ The Lord God took man and put him in the Garden of Eden to work it and take care of it. And the Lord God commanded the man, “You are free to eat from any tree in the garden; but you must not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, for when you eat of it you will surely die””* Genesis 2:15-17

However, Satan deceived Eve. He told her the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil wasn’t really bad – rather it would make them like gods. She believed the lie and ate the fruit of the tree. Adam, although he knew it was a lie, also ate of the tree. 1Timothy 2:14.

*“When the woman saw that the fruit of the tree was good for food and pleasing to the eye, and also desirable for gaining wisdom, she took some and ate it. She also gave some to her husband, who was with her, and he ate it”* Genesis 3:6

### **D. THE RESULT**

Through that one act of sin, man lost the glory of God, fellowship with God and the dominion over the Creation. Satan then took the throne vacated by Adam and Eve and exercised his dominion over the earth, and death filled the world. Hebrews 2:14-15. *“...sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because [in Adam] all sinned...”* Romans 5:12

All the generations following Adam and Eve have inherited their fallen nature. All have come under the power and dominion of Satan.

*“As for you, you were dead in your transgressions and sins, in which you used to live when you followed the ways of this world and the ruler of the kingdom of the air, the spirit who is now at work in those who are disobedient. All of us also lived among them at one time, gratifying the cravings of our sinful nature and following its desires and thoughts. Like the rest, we were by nature objects of wrath”* Ephesians 2:1-3 People’s hearts, everywhere, are now filled with: **I. Idolatry**

*“For although they knew God, they neither glorified him as God nor gave their thanks to him, but their thinking became futile and their foolish hearts were darkened. Although they claimed to be wise, they became fools and exchanged the glory of God for images made to look like mortal man and bird and animals and reptiles”* Romans 1:21-23

## 2. Immorality

*“Therefore God gave them over in the sinful desires of their hearts to sexual impurity for the degrading of their bodies with one another. They exchanged the truth of God for a lie, and worshipped and served created things rather than the Creator – who is forever praised. Amen. Because of this, God gave them over to shameful lusts. Even their women exchanged natural relations for unnatural ones. In the same way the men also abandoned natural relations with women and were inflamed with lust for one another. Men committed indecent acts with other men, and received in themselves the due penalty for their perversion”* Romans 1:24-27

### **3. All Kinds Of Wickedness**

*“Furthermore, since they did not think it worthwhile to retain the knowledge of God, he gave them over to a depraved mind, to do what ought not to be done. They have become filled with every kind of wickedness, evil, greed and depravity. They are full of envy, murder, strife, deceit and malice. They are gossips, slanderers, God-haters, insolent, arrogant and boastful; they invent ways of doing evil; they disobey their parents; they are senseless, faithless, heartless, ruthless. Although they know God’s righteous decree that those who do such things deserve death, they not only continue to do these very things, but also approve of those who practice them”* Romans 1:28-32

### **E. GOD’S GREAT PLAN TO RESTORE**

God did not give up man because of sin. No! Instead, He put into action another great plan – the plan to save mankind from Satan’s power and to restore him to His original plan of being His sons and sharing His throne. He began to prepare the world for the coming of the Saviour – Jesus.

*“For as in Adam all die, so in Christ all will be made alive”* 1Corinthians 15:22 The New Testament records the story of Christ, the One Who would come to save us from our sins.

## **What The New Testament Teaches**

### *Chapter 4*

## **Jesus**

### **A. JESUS IS THE SON OF GOD**

Two thousand years ago a man appeared on the scene of history. He was born into the world and grew up into manhood just like every other person, but this man was different to anyone else. He was no ordinary man.

A virgin conceived by the Holy Spirit to bring Him to birth. He was God, Himself, coming to earth in human form. He was the “*Son of God*” Luke 1:26-35

*“In the beginning was the Word [Jesus], and the Word was with God and the Word was God ...The Word became flesh and lived for a while among us. We have seen his glory, the glory of the one and only Son, who came from the Father, full of grace and truth” John 1:1, 14*

## **B. JESUS CAME TO THE WORLD FOR A SPECIAL PURPOSE**

### **1. To Rescue Mankind From Satan’s Power**

*“For the Son of Man came to seek and save the lost” Luke 19:10 See also Colossians 1:13.*

### **2. To Give His Life As A Ransom To Buy Us Back**

*“...the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many” Matthew 20:28*

### **3. To Destroy The Works Of Satan In Our Lives**

*“He who does what is sinful is of the devil, because the devil has been sinning from the beginning. The reason the Son of God appeared was to destroy the devil’s work” 1John 3:8*

### **4. To Give Us Eternal Life**

*“...and this is the testimony: God has given us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. He who has the Son has life; he who does not have the Son of God does not have life” 1John 5:11,12 See also John 3:16,17 and John 10:10.*

### **5. To Give Us New Birth Into The Family Of God**

*“Yet all who received him, to those who believed in his name, he gave the right (power) to become the children of God – children born not of natural descent, nor of human decision or a husband’s will, but born of God” John 1:12 See also 1John 3:1,2.*

### **6. To Restore Our Fellowship With God The Father**

*“We proclaim to you what we have seen and heard, so that you also may have fellowship with us. And our fellowship is with the Father and with his Son, Jesus Christ” 1John 1:3*

## **C. JESUS CAME TO SHOW US WHAT GOD IS LIKE**

*“If you really knew me [Jesus], you would know my Father as well. From now on, you do know him and have seen ... Anyone who has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, ‘show us the Father?’ Don’t you believe that I am in the Father, and that the Father is in me? The words that I say to you are not just my own. Rather, it is the Father, living in me, who is doing the work. Believe me when I say I am in the Father and the Father is in me ...” John 14:7-11 See also John 1:18.*

### **1. He Showed Us God’s Love**

*“This is how God showed his love among us: He sent his one and only Son in to the world that we might live through him. This is love; not that we loved God, but that he loved us and sent his Son as atoning sacrifice for our sins” 1 John 4:9,10 See also Romans 5:8.*

### **2. He Showed Us God’s Power**

#### **a. He healed the sick, the lame and the blind**

*“News about him spread all over Syria, and people brought to him all who were ill with various diseases, those suffering severe pain, the demon-possessed, the epileptics and the*

paralytics, and he healed them” Matthew 4:24 See also John 9:1-7.  
**Spirits**

**b. He cast out Evil**

“And Jesus healed many who had various diseases. He also drove out many demons, but would no let them speak because they knew who he was” Mark 1:34 See also Mark 5:1-17.

**c. He performed miracles**

“A furious squall came up, and the waves broke over the boat, so that it was nearly swamped ...Jesus got up, rebuked the wind and said to the waves, ‘Quiet be still!’ The wind died down and it was completely calm ... His disciples were terrified and asked each other, ‘Who is this? Even the wind and waves obey him!’” Mark 4:37-41 See also John 6:1-21.

**d. He raised the dead**

“...Jesus called in a loud voice, ‘Lazarus, come out!’ The dead man came out, his hands and feet wrapped with strips of linen, and a cloth around his face. Jesus said to them, “Take off the grave clothes and let him go”” John 11:43-44

**D. JESUS SHARED OUR SUFFERINGS IN HIS LIFE**

During His life on earth Jesus experienced all the troubles of life that we face, and so understands how we feel. “For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but we have one who has been tempted in every way, just as we are – yet was without sin” Hebrews 4:15 See also Matthew 8:17.

**E. JESUS DIED ON THE CROSS FOR US**

Wicked men took the Lord Jesus and executed him by nailing Him to a wooden cross like a common criminal. He could have saved Himself, but He did not, for it was through His death on the cross that God was going to save the world. Jesus died for us! Read Mark 15:16-19.

“He himself bore our sins in his body on the tree, so that we might die to sins and live for righteousness; by his wounds you have been healed” 1Peter 2:24 See also Isaiah 53:5-6.

**F. JESUS ROSE FROM THE DEAD FOR US**

After three days in the tomb God raised His Son from the dead! Read Matthew 28. This was for us!

“But because of his great love for us, God, who is rich in mercy, made us alive with Christ... God raised us up with Christ and seated us with him in the heavenly realms in Christ Jesus...” Ephesians 2:4-6 See also Romans 6:4.

**G. JESUS OPENED THE DOOR OF HEAVEN FOR US**

When His work on the earth was completed, Jesus returned to Heaven to be with God His Father. But this, too, was for us... for He opened the way to God’s presence for us, where we can live now and forever!

“ Therefore, brothers, since we have confidence to enter the Most Holy Place by the blood of Jesus, by a new and living way opened for us through the curtain, that is, his body...Let us draw near to God with a sincere heart in full assurance of faith...” Hebrews 10:19-22 See also John 14:1-3.

**MY COMMITMENT**

**Today I acknowledge that Jesus is the son of God and that He came into the world to meet my great need of a Saviour. I will also tell others that He came to the world for them.**

## Chapter 5

# The Cross

When Jesus was put to death by being nailed to a wooden cross, wicked men thought they were just executing a man who was disturbing their way of life. They did not realize that the cross was planned by God from the beginning of the world.

### A. GOD DEALS WITH ALL SIN

Through His Son’s death on the Cross, the great Creator, God was dealing with every person’s sin, suffering and sorrow. Jesus was dying in the place of every individual in the world. Receiving personally what He has done on the Cross brings the answer to all our needs.

#### 1. God Reveals His Power Through The Cross

*“For the message of the cross is foolishness to those who are perishing, but to us who are being saved it is the power of God”* 1Corinthians 1:18 See also Romans 1:16.

#### 2. God Shows His Love On The Cross

*“But God demonstrates his own love for us in this: While we were still sinners, Christ died for us”* Romans 5:8

#### 3. God Removed Our Sorrows On The Cross

*“Surely he took up our infirmities and carried our sorrows, yet we considered him stricken by God, smitten by him, and afflicted”* Isaiah 53:4

#### 4. Jesus Took The Punishment For Our Sins On The Cross

*“But he was pierced for our transgressions, he was crushed for our iniquities; the punishment that brought us peace was upon him, and by his wounds we are healed ... We all, like sheep, have gone astray, each of us turned to his own way; and the Lord has laid on him the iniquity of us all”* Isaiah 53:5,6 See also 1Peter 2:24.

### B. NEW RELATIONSHIP WITH GOD THROUGH THE CROSS

Because God is so holy and righteous, sin separates us from Him. No one with sin in their hearts is able to be in His presence.

So, not only by dying on the Cross did Jesus suffer for our sins in our place; but also He made it possible for us to know God personally and to experience the love, peace and joy which fellowship with Him brings.

#### 1. We Become Acceptable To God Through The Cross

*“God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God”* 2Corinthians 5:21

#### 2. We Receive Forgiveness Through The Cross

*“For he has rescued us from the dominion of darkness and brought us into the Kingdom of the Son he loves, in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins”* Colossians 1:13-14  
See also 1John 2:1-2.

#### 3. We Become Members Of God’s Family Through The Cross

*“Both the one who makes men holy and those who are made holy are of the same family.*

*So Jesus is not ashamed to call them, brothers. He says, ‘I will declare your name to my brothers; in the presence of the congregation I will sing your praise’” Hebrews 2:11-12 See also John 1:12.*

### **C. FREEDOM THROUGH THE CROSS**

Jesus’ death on the Cross was a great victory for us. Because God dealt with our sin on the Cross, it means also that all the misery and suffering which is a result of sin was also dealt with.

The Cross has won great freedom for us!

#### **1. Freedom From Satan**

*“And having disarmed the powers and authorities, he made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them by the Cross” Colossians 2:15 See also Colossians 1:13.*

#### **Freedom From Past Sins**

*“So if the Son sets you free, you will be free indeed” John 8:36 See also Colossians 2:13*

#### **3. Freedom From Present Sins**

*“For sin shall not be your master, because you are not under the law, but under grace” Romans 6:14*

#### **4. Freedom From Sickness**

*“This was to fulfil what was spoken through the prophet Isaiah: ‘He took up our infirmities and carried our sicknesses’” Matthew 8:17 See also 1 Peter 2:24.*

#### **Freedom From The Curse Of The Law**

*“Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us, for it is written, ‘Cursed is everyone who is hung on a tree’” Galatians 3:13 See also Deuteronomy 28:15-68.*

#### **6. Freedom From The Judgement**

*“Then Christ would have had to suffer many times since the creation of the world. But now he has appeared once for all at the end of the ages to do away with sin by the sacrifice of himself. Just as man is destined to die once, and after that to face judgement” Hebrews 9:26,27*

#### **7. Freedom From Everlasting Death**

*“For God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal life” John 3:16*

### **D. LOVE AND JUSTICE MEET AT THE CROSS**

The Cross is the place where the love of God and the righteous judgement of God meet. His righteous judgment demanded the death penalty for sin – the shedding of blood. His love met His own demands and Jesus, the Son of God, died in our place.

*“But God demonstrates his own love for us in this: While we were still sinners, Christ died for us. Since we have now been justified (made just as if I’d never sinned) by his blood, how much more shall we be saved from God’s wrath through him! For if, when we were God’s enemies, we were reconciled to him through the death of his Son, how much more, having been reconciled, shall we be saved through his life! Not only is this so, but we also rejoice in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, through whom we have now received reconciliation”*

Romans 5:8-11

## **E. THE CROSS IS THE CENTRE OF HISTORY**

The Cross of Jesus Christ is the centre point of mankind’s existence on earth. From the moment the first man and woman sinned, see Genesis 3, it was pre-planned by God that Jesus would die on the Cross.

From that time on, people looked forward in faith to what God promised He would do on the Cross to save them. Today we look back and, by believing in what Jesus has done for us on the Cross, receive forgiveness and new life.

### **MY COMMITMENT**

**Today I put my whole trust in what God was doing for me when Jesus died on the Cross. I believe He took the punishment for my sin. I receive the forgiveness that God is offering to me. And I thank Him for the relationship this now gives me with Him. I make a decision today that I will live each day in this personal relationship with God and commit myself to share this truth with others.**

## *Chapter 6*

# **The Blood Of Christ**

The shedding of Jesus Christ’s blood on the Cross was a factor in order for us to receive forgiveness for our sins and acceptance into the presence of God. *“...without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness”* Hebrews 9:22

## **A. LIFE IS IN THE BLOOD**

*“For the life of a creature is in the blood, and I have given it to you to make atonement for yourselves ... it is the blood that makes atonement for one’s life”* Leviticus 7:11

When we sin, we earn death. *“The wages of sin is death”* Romans 6:23 Jesus paid this penalty for us by shedding His blood (dying for us – in our place).

Atonement (at-one-ment) means to be made AT ONE with God. Jesus gave his life (shed his blood) on the Cross for our AT-ONE-MENT (atonement). This made it possible for us to be AT-ONE with God. Jesus’ blood means we are no longer His enemy but His friend, His sons and daughters. By faith we accept what He did for us.

## **B. WHAT SIN DOES TO OUR LIFE**

### **1. Separates Us From God**

*“But your iniquities have separated you from your God; your sins have hidden his face from you, so that He will not hear”* Isaiah 59:2

### **2. Makes Us Feel Guilty**

*“My guilt has overwhelmed me like a burden too heavy to bear”* Psalms 38:4

### **3. Allows Satan Access To Us**

*“...the accuser of our brothers, who accuses them before God day and night...”* Revelation 12:10

### **4. Demands The Death Penalty**

*“...the soul who sins is the one who will die”* Ezekiel 18:4

### **C. THE BLOOD IS FOR GOD**

The blood of Christ wholly satisfies God’s law – which requires a penalty for breaking the law.

1 John 3:4 says *“Sin is breaking the law.”*

The blood protects us from the penalty of breaking the law (death).

In Exodus 12, God commands the people of Israel to put the blood of a lamb on their door-posts to protect them from the destroyer – who would kill all the firstborn. This lamb was a picture of the Lamb – Jesus- Who would come later. God said, *“...when I see the blood, I will pass over [protect] you...”* verse 13.

#### **1. Fellowship Is Restored**

*“But God demonstrates his own love for us in this: While we were still sinners, Christ died for us. Since we have now been justified by his blood, how much more shall we be saved from God’s wrath through him”* Romans 5:8,9

#### **2. We Are Redeemed (Purchased Back From Slavery To Sin)**

*“In him we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, in accordance with the riches of God’s grace”* Ephesians 1:7

### **D. THE BLOOD IS FOR MAN**

The Blood has satisfied God; now it is to satisfy us in the cleansing of our conscience from guilt.

#### **1. The Blood Cleanses From Guilt**

*“How much more, then, will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself unblemished to God, cleanse our conscience from acts that lead to death, so that we may serve the living God!”* Hebrews 9:14

#### **2. The Blood Sanctifies Us**

*“And so Jesus also suffered outside the city gate to make the people holy through his own blood”* Hebrews 13:12

#### **3. The Blood Brings Us Close To God**

*“...and through him to reconcile to himself all things, whether things on earth or things in heaven, by making peace through his blood, shed on the cross. Once you were alienated from God and enemies in your minds because of your evil behaviour. But now he has reconciled you..”* Colossians 1:20-22

#### **4. The Blood Gives Boldness To Enter God’s Presence**

*“Therefore, brothers, since we have confidence to enter the Most Holy Place by the blood of Jesus, by a new and living way opened for us through the curtain, that is, the body...Let us draw near to God with a sincere heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled to cleanse us from a guilty conscience and having our bodies washed with pure water”* Hebrews 10:19-22

#### **5. The Blood Perfects Us In The Sight Of God**

*“...because by one sacrifice he has made perfect forever those who are being made holy”* Hebrews 10:14

### **E. THE BLOOD IS FOR THE DEVIL**

Satan’s most strategic activity in this age is as the accuser of the brethren (Revelation 12:10) and it is as this that the Lord confronts him in His special ministry as High Priest through His own blood. Hebrews 9:11-14.

### **1. The Blood Puts God On Man’s Side Against The Devil**

“...If God is for us, who can be against us? ...Who will bring any charge against those whom God has chosen? Shall God who justifies? Who is he that condemns? Will Christ Jesus, who died – more than that, who was raised to life – and is at the right hand of God and is also interceding [praying] for us?” Romans 8:31,33,34

The devil has no ground for accusation against those who have received the work of Christ’s shed blood for them.

### **2. The Blood Dissolves All Satan’s Legal Rights Of Ownership Over Us**

“...in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness [remission] of sins” Colossians 1:14 ‘Redemption’ means to ‘buy back.’ We are under new ownership, and the price that was paid for us was the shed blood of Jesus.

“...the church of God, which he bought with his own blood” Acts 20:28 See also 1Corinthians 6:19-20 and 1Timothy 2:6.

## **F. WHAT THE BLOOD OF CHRIST HAS BROUGHT US**

### **1. Purity Of Heart**

“But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus, His Son, purifies us from all sin” 1John 1:7

### **2. Eternal Life**

“Jesus said to them, ‘I tell you the truth, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you have no life in you. Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day’” John 6:53-54

### **3. Approach To God**

“But now in Christ Jesus you who once were far away have been brought near through the blood of Christ” Ephesians 2:13

## **MY COMMITMENT**

**I now understand what the shed blood of Jesus means to God, to Satan and to me. I make my commitment to share with others the truth concerning the blood of Christ. I will remind myself often of the covenant God has with me, to forgive my sin and cleanse me from sin and protect me from Satan’s harm.**

## **Chapter 7**

# **The Resurrection**

After His death on the Cross, Jesus lay in the grave for three days. Matthew 12:40. Then God raised His Son from the dead! Read Matthew 28.

“...and who through the Spirit of Holiness was declared with power to be the Son of God by his resurrection from the dead: Jesus Christ our Lord” Romans 1:4

## **A. GOD RAISED YOU UP TOGETHER WITH CHRIST**

Jesus’ death was for you. So was His resurrection!

*“As for you, you were dead in your transgressions and sins, in which you used to live when you followed the ways of this world and of the ruler of the kingdom of the air ... But because of his great love for us, God, who is rich in mercy, made us alive with Christ even when we were dead in transgressions – it is by grace you have been saved. And God raised us up with Christ and seated us with him in the heavenly realms in Christ Jesus”*

Ephesians 2:1-6 See also Colossians 3:1-3

### **1. To Give You New Life**

*“...God...has saved us and called us to a holy life – not because of anything we have done but because of his own purpose and grace. This grace was given us in Christ Jesus before the beginning of time, but it has now been revealed through the appearing of our Saviour, Christ Jesus, who has destroyed death and has brought life and immortality to light through the gospel”* 2 Timothy 1:9-10

### **2. To Give You New Birth**

*“Praise be to the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ! In his great mercy he has given us new birth into a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead...”* 1Peter 1:3

### **3. To Give You A New Beginning**

*“Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation, the old has gone, the new has come”* 2Corinthians 5:17

### **4. To Give You:**

**a. Victory over Satan.** *“You dear children, are from God and have overcome the world, because the one who is in you is greater than the one who is in the world [Satan] ...for everyone born of God overcomes the world. This is the victory that has overcome the world, even our faith. Who is it that overcomes the world? Only he who believes that Jesus is the Son of God”* 1John 4:4;5:4,5

See also Colossians 2:13-15.

**b. Authority over Satan.** After His resurrection, *“...Jesus Christ ... has gone into heaven and is at God’s right hand – with angels, authorities and powers [this includes Satan] in submission to him”* 1Peter 3:21-22 See also Luke 10:17-19.

**c. Power over Satan.** *“I pray also that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened in order that you may know ... his incomparable great power for us who believe. That power is like the working of his mighty strength, which he exerted in Christ when he raised him from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly realms, far above all rule and authority, power and dominion, and every title that can be given, not only in the present age but also in the one to come and God places all things under his feet and appointed him to be the head over everything for the church, which is his body, the fullness of him who fills everything in every way”* Ephesians 1:18-23 See also Mark 16:15-18, Acts 1:8 and 4:33.

### **5. To Make You A Son And Heir In God’s Kingdom**

*“For you did not receive a spirit that makes you a slave again to fear, but you received the Spirit of Sonship. And by him we cry ‘Abba Father.’ The Spirit himself testifies with our*

*spirit that we are God’s children. Now if we are children, then we are heirs – heirs of God and co-heirs with Christ...” Romans 8:15-17*

## **B. THE RESURRECTION MEETS EVERY NEED OF LIFE**

### **1. It Is Your Deliverance From The PAST**

Your old sinful life was put to death on the Cross with Jesus, and buried with Him in the grave. Then, when Jesus was raised to life again, you were raised with Him as a new creation – leaving behind your old life in Jesus’ grave!

*“We were therefore buried with him through baptism into death in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, we too may live a new life...the death he died, he died to sin once for all; but the life he lives, he lives to God. In the same way, count yourselves dead to sin but alive to God in Christ Jesus” Romans 6:4-11 See also Ephesians 2:1-7 and Colossians 2:12-15.*

### **2. It Is Your Power For The PRESENT**

Because Jesus is ALIVE we have now received the power of the Holy Spirit to live a life of victory over sin and all Satan’s attacks against us.

*“What then, shall we say in response to this? If God is for us, who can be against us? He did not spare his own Son, but gave him up for us all – how will he not also, along with him, graciously give us all things? Who will bring any charge against whom God has chosen? Shall God who justifies? Who is he that condemns? Will Christ Jesus who died – more than that, who was raised to life – who is at the right hand of God and is also interceding for us? Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? Shall trouble or hardship or persecution or famine or nakedness or danger or sword? No in all these things we are more than conquerors through him who loves us...” Romans 8:31-39*

### **3. It Is Your Hope For The FUTURE**

The resurrection of Jesus gives us great hope for the future. He is called *“the firstborn from the dead”* Colossians 1:18. In His resurrection, he was opening the way for all those who would believe in him to follow after Him – to also be raised from the dead!

One wonderful day in the future, Jesus Christ will return to the earth again – not as a baby this time, but revealing to the whole world Who He really is – the glorious God and Ruler of all Creation. At that time all those who have died, believing in Him, will be raised to life again!

*“If Christ has not been raised, your faith is futile; you are still in your sins. Then those also who have fallen asleep in Christ are lost. If only in this life we have hope in Christ, we are to be pitied more than all men. But Christ has indeed been raised from the dead, the first fruits of those who have fallen asleep for since death came through a man, the resurrection of the dead comes also through a man. For as in Adam all die, so in Christ all will be made alive. But each in his own turn: Christ, the first fruits; then, when he comes, those who belong to him” 1Corinthians 15:17-23 See also 1Corinthians 15:50-57 and 1 Thessalonians 4:13-18.*

## **MY COMMITMENT**

**Because of the resurrection of Christ, I make a commitment today to receive the fullness of my new life and liberation in Him. I will stand fast in this truth and share it with everyone I can.**

## Chapter 8

# Repentance

Repentance is the first step we take to receive the salvation that God offers to us in the Lord Jesus Christ.

“...God has made this Jesus, whom you crucified, both Lord and Christ.’ When the people heard this, they were cut to the heart and said to Peter and the other apostles, ‘Brothers, what shall we do?’ Peter replied, ‘Repent and be baptised, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ so that your sins may be forgiven’” Acts 2:36-38 See also Acts 17:30.

### A. WHAT REPENTANCE IS NOT

#### 1. Not Just Feeling Guilty

Feeling guilty about our sins comes before repentance, but is not repentance itself. No one repents unless they first feel guilty about their sin, but not all who feel guilty actually repent. “As Paul discoursed on righteousness, self-control and the judgement to come, Felix was afraid and said, “That’s enough for now! You may leave. When I find it convenient, I will send for you”” Acts 24:25 Felix felt guilty but did not repent.

#### 2. Not Just Being Sorry For Your Sin

Some people are very sorry because of the consequences of their sin, or because they have been caught. Many people are sorry, not for what they have done wrong, but for the penalty they receive in being caught.

“Godly sorrow leads to repentance that brings salvation and leaves no regret, but worldly sorrow brings death.” 2Corinthians 7:10

#### 3. Not Just Trying To Be A Good Person

Many people try in their own strength to become a better person and change their way of life. Any self-effort has a root of self-righteousness in it, which does not acknowledge the need of repentance from sin.

“All of us have become like one who is unclean, and all our righteous acts are like filthy rags; we all shrivel up like a leaf, and like the wind our sins sweep us away” Isaiah 64:6

#### 4. Not Becoming Religious

The Pharisees in the Bible were extremely religious in behaviour and practice. They fasted and prayed and had many religious ceremonies, yet never repented. “But when he saw many of the Pharisees and Sadducees coming to where he was baptizing, he said to them: You brood of vipers! Who warned you to flee from the coming wrath? Produce fruit in keeping with repentance. And do not say to yourselves, ‘We have Abraham as our father. I tell you that out of these stones God can raise up children for Abraham. The axe is already at the root of the trees, and every tree that does not produce good fruit will be cut down and thrown into the fire” Matthew 3:7-10 See also Matthew 5:20.

#### 5. Not Just Knowing The Truth

Having an intellectual head knowledge of truth does not necessarily guarantee that the truth has become a living reality in one’s life. Believing with the head and believing with the heart are different (see Romans 10:10).

*“You believe that there is one God. Good! Even the demons believe that – and shudder. You foolish man, do you want further evidence that faith without righteous deeds is useless?”* James 2:19-20

## **B. WHAT TRUE REPENTANCE IS**

### **1. Being Sorry To God For Your Sin**

True repentance is a sorrow not just toward one’s self, or toward another person, but first and foremost it is true sorrow toward God.

*“Have mercy on me, O God, according to your unfailing love; according to your great compassion blot out my transgressions. Wash away all my iniquity and cleanse me from my sin. For I know my transgressions, and my sin is always before me. Against you, you only, have I sinned and done what is evil in your sight...”* Psalms 51:1-4 See also Psalms 38:8.

### **2. Being Truthful About Your Sin**

*“Then I acknowledged my sin to you and did not cover up my iniquity. I said ‘I will confess my transgressions to the Lord’ – and you forgave the guilt of my sin”* Psalms 32:5 See also 1John1:9.

### **3. Turning Away From Your Sin**

*“He who conceals his sins does not prosper, but whosoever confesses and renounces them finds mercy”* Proverbs 28:13

### **4. Hating Sin**

*“Thou hast loved righteousness and hated iniquity, therefore ... God has anointed thee ...”* Hebrews 1:9

### **5. When Possible, Paying Back To Others What You Owe**

*“But Zacchaeus stood up and said to the Lord, ‘Look, Lord! Here and now I give half of my possessions to the poor, and if I have cheated anybody out of anything, I will pay back four times the amount’”* Luke 19:8 See also Leviticus 6:1-7.

## **C. WHAT REPENTANCE INVOLVES**

### **1. Turning From Sin**

*“Don’t be like your fathers were! The earlier prophets pled in vain with them to turn from all their evil ways. ‘Come, return to me,’ the Lord God said. But no, they wouldn’t listen; they paid no attention at all”* Zechariah 1:4. See also Galatians 5:19-21 and Ephesians 5:5.

### **Turning From The World**

*“Stop loving this evil world and all that it offers you, for when you love these things you show that you do not really love God”* 1John 2:15. See also James 4:4.

**3. Turning From Yourself**  
*“He died for all so that all who live – having received eternal life from him – might live no longer for themselves, to please themselves, but to spend their lives pleasing Christ who died and rose again for them”* 2Corinthians 5:15. See also Luke 14:26.

**4. Turning From The Devil**

“...to open their eyes to their true condition so that they may repent and live in the light of God instead of in Satan’s darkness ...” Acts 26:18. See also Colossians 1:13. **5. Turning To God**

“Therefore tell the people: This is what the Lord Almighty says: ‘Return unto me,’ declares the Lord Almighty, ‘and I will return to you,’ says the Lord Almighty” Zechariah 1:3 **6. Turning To Right Living**

“Do not offer the parts of your body to sin, as instruments of wickedness, but rather offer yourselves to God, as those who have been brought from death to life, and offer the parts of your body to him as instruments of righteousness” Romans 6:13

### MY COMMITMENT

**Today I decide to repent and will keep turning from sin as God reveals wrong doing to me.**

## Chapter 9

### Faith

Faith has always been the mark of a disciple of Jesus. The early disciples were known as BELIEVERS. Jesus said: “...Everything is possible for him who believes” Mark 9:23

Faith means total dependence on God. When Adam sinned, he stepped out of Goddependence into in-dependence (which is unbelief). This is the reason God has placed such a high priority on faith. Faith is the way we come back into relationship with God (Goddependence).

This dependence on God is called faith. Faith advances you beyond your five senses of seeing, hearing, tasting, smelling and touching. Faith releases you from your limited capacities. By faith you move from in-ability to His-ability.

This is the walk of faith to which all of us are called – where “nothing is impossible” Matthew 17:20.

#### A. WHAT IS FAITH

Faith is obedient action in response to what God has said. True faith is expressed in 1) Obedience and 2) Action, in response to 3) Hearing God’s Word (voice).

“Now faith is being sure of what we hope for and certain of what we do not see.” Hebrews 11:1.

Faith means having trust, assurance or confidence in another person or that person’s words. Having faith in God involves an exchange of self-trust for God-trust. We stop trusting in ourselves and trust Him. We abandon reliance on our limited source of knowledge and start receiving from His unlimited source.

#### B. TWO KINDS OF KNOWLEDGE

“My message and my preaching were not with wise and persuasive words, but with a demonstration of the Spirit’s power, so that your faith might not rest on MEN’S WISDOM, but on God’s power. We do, however, speak a message of wisdom among the mature, but not the wisdom of this age or of the rulers of this age, who are coming to nothing. No, we speak of God’s SECRET WISDOM, a wisdom that has been hidden and that God destined for our glory before time began” 1Corinthians 2:2-7 See also verses 816. **1. Sense Knowledge**

All knowledge that comes to natural man comes to him through the five senses – seeing, hearing, tasting, smelling and touching. This is limited knowledge, described as ‘man’s wisdom.’

## **2. Revelation Knowledge**

This knowledge is not based on the five senses, nor on natural reasoning but on an alternative source – the TRUTH of the Word of God. It is received through man’s spirit, and is described as ‘God’s Wisdom’ – “We live by faith, not by sight” 2Corinthians 5:7

## **C. THE BASIS OF FAITH**

The basis of having faith in God is in three important realities:

### **1. The Nature Of God**

“When God made his promise to Abraham, since there was no one greater for him to swear by, he swore by himself.” Hebrews 6:13

- a. **He cannot change.** “I the Lord do not change...” Malachi 3:6 See also James 1:17.
- b. **He cannot fail.** “I know that you can do all things; no plan of yours can be thwarted” Job 42:2 See also 1Chronicles 28:20.
- c. **He cannot lie.** “God is not a man, that he should lie, nor a son of man, that he should change his mind. Does he speak and then not act? Does he promise and not fulfil?” Numbers 23:19 See also Titus 1:2. **2. The Redemptive Work Of The Son Of God**

“Let us fix our eyes on Jesus, the author and perfecter of our faith, who for the joy set before him endured the cross, scorning its shame, and sat down at the right hand of the throne of God”

Hebrews 12:2

Christ has become the source of our faith in God. The fact of His death and resurrection provides ground for our believing.

“...Christ Jesus...has become for us wisdom from God – that is, our righteousness, holiness and redemption” 1Corinthians 1:30 See also Romans 5:1-2. **3. The Word Of God**

“Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away” Matthew 24:35 See also Isaiah 40:8.

“The Lord said to me, ‘...I am watching to see that my word is fulfilled’” Jeremiah 1:12

His Word stands true forever. Faith comes when God brings a specific word – out of all He has ever said – directly to us in our circumstances. Spoken in this way, the Word of God comes alive to us, releasing our faith.

## D. HOW FAITH WORKS

The principle of faith, Romans 3:27 is to operate in our lives continually, no matter what the circumstances, see 2Corinthians 5:7, James 1:5-60. It works in the following way:

### 1. God Gives Us Faith

*“For in the Gospel a righteousness from God is revealed, a righteousness that is by faith from the first to the last, just as it is written: ‘The righteous will live by [HIS] faith’”* Romans 1:17 See also Habakkuk 2:4 NIV.

The righteous live by HIS faith that is, the faith HE gives us as a gift.

*“For by grace are you saved through faith, it is the gift of God ...”* Ephesians 2:89  
*“...according as God has dealt to every man ... faith”* Romans 12:3

### 2. Faith Comes By A Word From God

Firstly, God encourages us by speaking a “word” relevant to our circumstances. This comes by the Holy Spirit speaking inside your spirit as you read the Bible or listen to preaching or teaching of the Word of God.

*“...faith comes from hearing the word, and is heard through the word of Christ”*  
Romans 10:17 See also Genesis 15:3-5; 17:15-21; Joshua 1:8.

### 3. Obedience To The Word

For faith to operate in our situation, we must obey that word. Faith is ACTIVE, not passive. Most of God’s promises are conditional – He will do His part, if we do our part.

*“...faith by itself, if it is not accompanied by action, is dead”* James 2:17 See James 1:22-25; Genesis 15:6; Matthew 7:24-27.

### 4. The Crisis Or “Trial Of Our Faith”

This is a period of testing. Everything happening around us appears contrary to what God has said, and there seems to be no natural evidence for our believing. At this point, our faith rests completely on God’s Word (what He has spoken to us). *“In this you greatly rejoice, though now for a little while you may have had to suffer grief in all kinds of trials. These have come so that your faith – of greater worth than gold, which perishes even though refined by fire – may be proved genuine and may result in praise, glory and honour when Jesus Christ is revealed”* 1Peter 1:6-7 See also Romans 4:16-21; Psalms 105:17-19.

In faith we cast ourselves on HIS FAITHFULNESS. In our times of doubt and struggle, God is faithful and does not abandon us.

*“If we believe not, he abides faithful. He cannot deny himself”* 2Timothy 2:13 He was faithful to Thomas and Peter when their faith was tested. Jesus didn’t abandon them.  
*“He will never leave us nor forsake us”* Hebrews 13:5

### 5. The Result

The end result is always victory on the part of the believer, bringing glory to God. See also James 1:2-4, 12; Genesis 21:1-3; Psalms 105:19-22; Acts 3:16; Hebrews 6:13-15.  
*“...for everyone born of God has overcome the world. This is the victory that has overcome the world, even our faith”* 1John 5:4

## MY COMMITMENT

**Today I decide to live by faith and trust God in all areas of my life. I acknowledge my need to be totally dependant on God – which is faith in action. In problems, challenges and difficulties I will rely on His faithfulness. God’s response will be His grace – His enabling power. I will teach others also to rely on God’s faithfulness and walk with faith in God.**

## *Chapter 10*

# Grace

*“With great power the apostles continued to testify to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and MUCH GRACE was with them all” Acts 4:33*

*“From Attilia they sailed back to Antioch, where they had been COMMITTED TO THE GRACE OF GOD for the work they had now completed” Acts 14:26*

Why was the grace of God so important in the experience of the early Christians? Why did the church in Antioch pray the GRACE of God would be upon Paul and Barnabas, and later on Paul and Silas, as they set out on their missionary journeys?

### **A. THE MEANING OF GRACE**

The most common understanding of the word “grace” is **“God’s unmerited favour”** – in other words, even though we were sinners, deserving judgment, God looked upon us in love and forgave us.

This, however, is only half its meaning. It also means **“God’s enabling power.”**  
*“May our Lord Jesus Christ himself and God our Father, who loved us and by his grace gave us eternal encouragement and good hope, encourage your hearts and strengthen you in every good deed and word” 2Thessalonians 2:16-17*

Not only does His grace make us accepted in the family of God, but it also provides the power we need to live the Christian life. Two scriptures indicate the two aspects of God’s grace in every believer.

#### **1. God’s Unmerited Favour**

*“For it is by grace [God’s unmerited favour] you have been saved, through faith and this is not from yourselves, it is the gift of God – not by works, so that no one can boast” Ephesians 2:8-9*

#### **2. God’s Enabling Power.**

*“...In love he predestined us to be adopted as his sons through Jesus Christ, in accordance with his pleasure and will – to the praise of his glorious grace [enabling power], which he has freely given us in the one he loves” Ephesians 1:4-6* Read the whole chapter, which describes all that we have received by grace (by his enabling power).

In salvation, not only is God’s unmerited favour expressed (in that we receive forgiveness and restored relationship with Him even though we don’t deserve it), but so also is God’s enabling power – for it is by HIS power that we can and are being transformed.

*“Therefore if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation, the old has gone, the new has come!” 2Corinthians 5:17*

This principle of grace continues throughout our walk with God. In every area of our Christian lives, it is God’s grace that causes us to grow and be strong – God’s enabling power given to us without any merit on our part.

“...grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ...” 2 Peter 3:18

### **B. GRACE GIVEN TO THE HEROES OF FAITH**

This operating force of grace is revealed in the lives of men and women throughout the whole Bible. Every hero of faith began his walk with God aware of his own weakness and inability.

It was only through him allowing God’s grace – His enabling power – to work in his life that he was able to become the kind of person that God wanted him to be, and to fulfil the plan and purpose God had for his life.

### **C. GRACE IN THE LIFE OF MOSES**

Read Exodus 3:11-13: 4:1-13. The command the Lord gave Moses was no small task. Egypt was the ruling empire of the day. It was an evil nation, and Pharaoh, its satanic leader, held authority that was claimed to be divine. Every nation in the known world lived in fear of Pharaoh.

When God told Moses to go down to Egypt and tell Pharaoh to let His three million people go free from slavery, Moses’ immediate response – out of his own weakness and inability – was as follows; 3:11 **“Who am I?”**

3:13 **“Who are you?”**

4:1 **“They won’t believe me!”**

4:10 **“I’m not eloquent!”**

4:13 **“Lord, send someone else!”**

But with God’s grace, Moses did go down to Egypt, and with signs and wonders brought the people of Israel out as God had told him to.

### **D. GRACE IN LIFE OF GIDEON**

Read Judges 6:1-24. The call of God came to Gideon to deliver His (God’s) people from the conquering armies of Midian. Israel had known only defeat for many years. Gideon’s response to God’s word in verse 13 reveals his initial unbelief: *“But sir, Gideon replied, ‘If the Lord is with us, why has all this happened to us? Where are all his wonders that our fathers told us about when they said, Did not the Lord bring us up out of Egypt? But now the Lord has abandoned us into the hand of Midian.’”* Even when the Lord encouraged him and promised to be with him, Gideon answered: *“How can I save Israel? I’m the smallest member of the smallest family in our tribe!”* see verse 15.

But despite his fear and inability, with God’s grace (enabling power) Gideon saved Israel. And he did it with just a small band of men. It was GRACE that made the difference!

### **E. GRACE IN THE LIFE OF THE APOSTLE PAUL**

Read Acts 15:40. Before Paul and Silas set out on their missionary journey together, the church at Antioch prayed for them and *“commended [them] ...to the grace of the Lord”* for the work that was ahead of them.

Read Paul’s description of his experiences in 2 Corinthians 11:22-33. It is understandable that he was first commended to the grace of God!

He needed it to survive! The Lord’s answer to Paul’s confession of weakness is His promise for us too: “...*My grace is sufficient for you, for my power is made perfect in weakness...*” 2Corinthians 12:9

## **F. GRACE RELEASED IN OUR LIVES**

In our relationship with God – as we walk with Him each day – we constantly meet situations that would try to overwhelm us. Our response to God is to trust His Word. We express our trust through obedience.

This proves we believe what God’s Word says despite what the circumstances might indicate. God’s response to our faith is His grace – His enabling power, which causes us to triumph in every situation.

## **G. TWO IMPORTANT PROMISES**

### **1. We Have Bold Access To The Throne Of Grace**

*“Let us then approach the THRONE OF GRACE with confidence, so that we may receive mercy and FIND GRACE (His enabling power) TO HELP US IN OUR TIME OF NEED”* Hebrews 4:16

### **2. God is Able**

*“And God is able to make ALL grace ABOUND to you, so that in ALL things at ALL times, having ALL that you need, you will ABOUND in EVERY good work”* 2Corinthians 9:8

## **MY COMMITMENT**

**Today I decide to receive God’s grace – His enabling power – into every area and problem that arises in my life, and teach others to do the same also.**

## **Chapter 11**

# **Water Baptism**

Jesus commanded all those who believed in Him to be baptized in water. *“Then Jesus came to them and said, ‘All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. Therefore, go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit...’”* Matthew 28:18,19 See also Acts 2:38-41. To be “baptized” means to be “totally immersed.” When a person repents from his sin and believes Jesus died for him, before many witnesses, he (or she) is to be taken to water, put right under it and brought up again. Why would Jesus command that his believers do such a strange thing?

## **A. UNDERSTANDING WATER BAPTISM**

Understanding what water baptism is all about is the key to a victorious and liberated Christian life.

The act of going under the water and rising up from it again is a picture demonstrating what has happened to the Christian believer.

## **B. FOUR STAGES OF CHRIST'S WORK PICTURED**

### **1. He Died ..... I Died In Him.**

*"For we know that our old self was crucified with him so that the body of sin might be rendered powerless, that we should no longer be slaves to sin - because anyone who has died has*

*been freed from sin" Romans 6:6-7*

### **2. He Was Buried ..... I Was Buried With Him.**

*"Or don't you know that all of us who were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his*

*death? We were therefore buried with him through baptism into death ..." Romans 6:34*

### **3. He Was Raised ..... I Have A New Life In Him**

*"...in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, we too may live a new life. If we have been united with him in his death, we will certainly also be*

*united with him in his resurrection" Romans 6:4-5*

### **4. He Ascended ..... I Ascended In Him**

*"And God raised us up with Christ and seated us with him in the heavenly realms in Christ*

*Jesus ..." Ephesians 2:6 See also Colossians 3:1*

## **C. WATER BAPTISM IS ...**

### **1. Your Funeral Service!**

A burial service is not to kill a man off. It is only performed when the man is dead already. And so, because you have "died" in Christ, you bury your old life in water baptism.

### **2. Your Resurrection To New Life!**

You rise out of the water demonstrating and declaring you are a new creation in Christ!  
*"Now if we died with Christ, we believe that we will also live with him. For we know that since Christ was raised from the dead, he cannot die again; death no longer has mastery over him.*

*"The death he died, he died to sin once and for all; but the life he lives, he lives to God. In the same way, count yourselves dead to sin but alive to God in Christ Jesus" Romans 6:8-11*

## **D. THE TWO KINGDOMS**

*"For he has rescued us from the dominion of darkness and brought us into the kingdom of the Son he loves" Colossians 1:12*

Every man and woman born into the world is born into the Kingdom of Darkness; born slaves of the dictator Satan. There is no way out of this kingdom except by DEATH, and there is no way into the Kingdom

of God except by BIRTH. And so Jesus became both our death and new birth - and this we declare in water baptism!

## **E. THE TWO RACES**

As there are two kingdoms, so within each kingdom is a different race of people. The Adamic Race populates the Kingdom of Darkness, and the New Creation populates the Kingdom of God.

### **1. The First Adam**

*"For as in Adam all die..."* 1 Corinthians 15:22 See also Romans 5:12. Adam was the father of us all, the entire human race. Adam's sin alienated us all from God. Because of his sin, we all inherited his rebellious and diseased nature and became subject to death. Adam's offspring are called "the Adamic Race".

### **2. The Last Adam**

*"You see, at just the right time, when we were still powerless, Christ died for the ungodly"* Romans 5:6 There was no way God could change the fallen Adamic Race. He had to put an end to that race and begin a whole new race of humanity. Jesus was the Last Adam. He came as the lastborn of the Adamic Race and the firstborn of a new race. As He hung upon the Cross, He hung there as the Last Adam - the lastborn of the Adamic Race. When He died on the Cross, the Adamic Race and the Adamic sinful nature died. God put to death the fallen creation in Him. The Adamic Race died in Christ.

### **3. The Second Man**

*"...so in Christ all will be made alive"* 1 Corinthians 15:22 Jesus came as God's new Man, through which a new race would be created. Jesus was raised from the dead - not as the Last Adam but as the Second Man, the Head of the New Creation. *"So it is written. 'The first man Adam became a living soul'; the last Adam, (Christ) a life-giving spirit... The first man was of the dust of the earth, the second man from heaven. 'As was the earthly man, so are those who are of the earth; and as is the man from heaven, so also are those who are of heaven. And just as we have borne the likeness of the earthly man, so shall we bear the likeness of the man from heaven'"* 1Corinthians 15:45-49

### **4. The New Creation**

*"Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; the old has gone, the new has come!"* 2Corinthians 5:17 See also Ephesians 2:10

In water baptism we declare to all our friends and acquaintances that we are no longer part of Adam's race and the Kingdom of Darkness. We are a New Creation in Christ, belonging to the Kingdom of God!

### **MY COMMITMENT**

**Through this study I now realise that my old life with its sin and judgment has been put to death in Jesus' death, and now because of Jesus' resurrection I have a whole new life to live. Because this is what water baptism pictures, I make this commitment to be baptized in water and to share this truth with others.**

## *Chapter 12*

# **The Holy Spirit**

After Jesus rose from the dead, He appeared to His disciples for 40 days. Then, when they were all gathered together with Him on the top of a high hill, He was taken up into Heaven before their eyes, read Acts 1:1-11. However, before He left, Jesus gave His believers a very special and wonderful promise: *"...I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Counsellor to be with you forever - the Spirit of truth... I tell you the truth: It is for your good that I am going away. Unless I go away, the Counsellor will not come to you; but if I go, I will send him to you."* John 14:16-18; 16: 5-7

Jesus has not left us alone in the world. He has sent the Holy Spirit.

### **A. THE HOLY SPIRIT IS GOD**

The very first thing we must understand about the Holy Spirit is that He is indeed God. *"Then Peter said, 'Ananias, how is it that Satan has so filled your heart that you have lied TO THE HOLY SPIRIT... You have not lied to men BUT TO GOD' "* Acts 5:3,4 See also 2 Corinthians 3:17.

God has chosen to express Himself to mankind as Father, as Son and as Holy Spirit.

These are the expression of three distinct Persons (Personalities), yet the three are one.

### **B. THE GIFT OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

The Holy Spirit is God's gift to every believer. When a person believes in Jesus, and receives the salvation He offers, the Holy Spirit comes to live in the believer, imparting spiritual life. *"Peter replied, 'Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ so that your sins may be forgiven. And you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. The promise is for you and your children and for all who are far off - for all whom the Lord our God will call' "* Acts 2:38,39 See also John 7:37-39.

### **C. THE WORK OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

#### **1. In The Believer's Personal Life**

The Holy Spirit comes to dwell within the believer to minister to him personally:

- a. **He Testifies of Our Relationship With God.** *"The Spirit himself testifies with our spirit*

that we are God's children" Romans 8:16 See also 1 John 3:24.

b. **He Teaches.** *"But the Counsellor, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, will teach you all things and will remind you of everything I have said to you"* John 14:26

c. **He Guides.** *"...because those who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God"*

Romans 8:14

d. **He Helps Us Live A Life Pleasing to God.** *"So I say, live by the Spirit, and you will not gratify the desires of the sinful nature".* Galatians 5:16 See also verses 17-25.

e. **He Helps Us in Prayer.** *"In the same way, the Spirit helps us in our weakness. We do not know what we ought to pray, but the Spirit himself intercedes for us with groans that words cannot express".* Romans 8:26

f. **He Gives Life To Our Bodies.** *"And if the Spirit of him who raised Jesus from the dead is living in you, he who raised Christ from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through*

*His Spirit, who lives in you"* Romans 8:11

## 2. In The Believer For Service

As well as giving the Holy Spirit to dwell in the believer, God also wants to fill and baptize the believer with the Holy Spirit to empower him to serve and glorify God in the world.

a. **The Holy Spirit Gives Power And Boldness To Witness.** *" But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you; and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth".* Acts 1:8 See also Acts 2:14-40.

b. **He Introduces The Supernatural Realm.** *"There are different kinds of gifts, but the same Spirit...To one there is given through the Spirit the message of wisdom, to another the message of knowledge by means of the same Spirit, to another faith by the same Spirit, to another gifts of healing by that one Spirit, to another miraculous powers, to another prophecy, to another the ability to distinguish between spirits, to another the ability to speak in different kinds of tongues, and to still another the interpretation of tongues"* 1Corinthians 12:4,8-10 See also Acts 2:4; 10:46; 19:6.

c. **He Testifies That Jesus Is Alive.** *"The God of our fathers raised Jesus from the dead... We are witnesses of these things and so is the Holy Spirit, whom God has given to those who obey him"* Acts 5:30-32 See also Acts 4:31-33.

d. **He Brings a Fresh Understanding of The word Of God.** *"...as it is written: 'No eye*

*has seen, no ear has heard, no mind has conceived what God has prepared for those who love him'*

*but God has revealed it to us by his Spirit. The Spirit searches all things, even the deep things of God” 1Corinthians 2:9,10 See also John 16:13.*

e. **He Fills Our Spirit With True Worship To God.** *“...be filled with the Spirit, speak to one another with psalms, hymns and spiritual songs. Sing and make music in your heart to the Lord” Ephesians 5:8,19 See also John 4:24.*

f. **He Glorifies Jesus.** *“But when he, the Spirit of truth, comes, he will guide you into all truth. He will not speak on his own; He will speak only what he hears, and he will tell you what is yet to come. he will bring glory to me by taking from what is mine and making it known to you. All that belongs to the Father is mine. That is why I said the Spirit will take from what is mine and make it known to you” John 16:13-15 See also John 15:26.*

#### **D. HOW TO BE BAPTIZED IN THE HOLY SPIRIT.**

God wants His Holy Spirit, who indwells you because you are a believer in Jesus, to fill you to overflowing with power to serve Him. Ephesians 5:18

1. **It Is A Gift Promised By God, So Ask For It** *“...how much more will your Father in heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him!” Luke 11:13 See also verses 9-12.*

2. **Begin to Praise God As You Receive In Faith** *“Then they worshiped him ,and returned to Jerusalem with great joy. And they stayed continually at the temple, praising God” Luke 24:52,53*

3. **You Can Speak With A Supernatural Language** *“...the Holy Spirit came on them, and they spoke in tongues...”Acts 19:6 See also Mark 16:17; Acts 2:4; 10:45, 46; 1 Corinthians 14:5, 18.*

#### **MY COMMITMENT**

**I thank God for the Gift of the Holy Spirit in my life. I make a decision today to respond to the Holy Spirit's prompting and directing. I determine to learn to listen for the voice of the Holy Spirit in my heart. I choose to be filled with the Spirit. I now open my spirit to be filled with the Holy Spirit.**

# Temptation

## A. SATAN ATTACKS

Satan attacks the individual Christian mostly through temptation. And he focuses this assault in two spheres:

### 1. The Desires Of The World

He will seek to tempt a believer to become absorbed into the world's system: to make the material blessings that the world offers a central desire; to make the honour and recognition of this world an important goal; and to make the comfort of being one with those of this world our basis for security.

### 2. The Desires Of The Flesh

Through Christ's work on the Cross, the true Christian is delivered from the results of sin, and from the power of sin. Romans 6:6-14. But he still lives in a physical body that is subject to natural appetites and desires. Satan will use these to try and get a Christian to place greater importance upon them than upon the promptings of the Holy Spirit within him. Romans 8:5-9 See also James 1:14; Ephesians 2:3

## B. SATAN'S ORIGINAL VICTORY

It was in the areas of the world and the flesh that Satan won his original victory in the temptation of the first man and woman, and these are still his tactics today.

*"For all that is in the world, the LUST OF THE FLESH (craving for sensual gratification), and the LUST OF THE EYES (greedy longings of the mind) and the PRIDE OF LIFE (assurance in one's own resources or in the stability of earthly things) - these do not come from the Father but are from the world (itself)"* 1John 2:16 Amplified Bible

### Compare Eve's Temptation With This Verse:

#### Genesis 3:6

Good FOR FOOD

Pleasing TO THE EYE

Desirable for GAINING WISDOM

#### 1 John 2:16

*"Lust of the flesh"*

*"Lust of the eyes"*

*"Pride of life"*

Since the fall of Adam and Eve, all mankind has been governed by their flesh (the three things outlined above).

The flesh is also corrupted by a sinful nature. Galatians 5:19-21

## C. VICTORY WON BY CHRIST

### 1. Through His Life

Jesus was tempted in everything, exactly as we are, *"yet was without sin"* Hebrews 4:15

### Compare Jesus' Temptation With This Verse:

#### Luke 4: 1-13

Stones to bread

Kingdoms of the earth

Pinnacle of the temple

#### 1 John 2:16

*"Lust of the flesh"*

*"Lust of the eyes"*

*"Pride of life"*

### 2. Through His Death And Resurrection

Faith that appropriates (claims, receives) Christ's work releases the Christian from the power and dominion that sin had over him. Romans 8:9

He is now free to choose to walk in obedience to God. Romans 6:8-14. *"For what the law was powerless to do in that it was weakened by the sinful nature, God did by sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful man... in order that the righteous requirements of the law might be fully met in us, who do not live according to the sinful nature (flesh) but according to the Spirit"* Romans 8:3,4

#### **D. THE CHRISTIAN'S CONTINUAL VICTORY**

Based on the foundation of this great victory won for us by Christ, the Christian can now defeat any attack from the enemy. Here are seven keys to continual victory:

##### **1. Know The Victory Is Already Won**

Because of his defeat at the Cross, the devil's only strength now is found in the Christian's Ignorance.

Hosea 4:6. But when a Christian knows the complete work of the Cross and Resurrection in his life, the devil is

stripped of any weapon against him. **2. Walk In Step With The Spirit**

A new power is placed within the Christian - the Holy Spirit Himself. We are to walk in obedience to

His inner promptings day by day. Galatians 5:22-25

##### **3. Recognize Temptation For What It Is**

Temptation is NOT sin. YIELDING to temptation is! James 1:15 See Genesis 4:6,7

##### **4. Understanding there Is A Way Of Escape Provided**

*"No temptation has seized you except what is common to man. And God is faithful. He will*

*not let you be tempted beyond what you can bear. But when you are tempted, he will also provide a*

*way out so that you can stand up under it"* 1Corinthians 10:13 James 4:7 details the way of escape: Submit

to God, resist the devil and he shall flee! **5. Keep The Right Focus In Life**

*"Since, then, you have been raised with Christ, set your hearts on things above, where Christ is seated at the right hand of God. Set your minds on things above, not on earthly things"* Colossians 3:1,2

See also Philippians 4:8; 1Timothy 6:11,12,13; 2 Peter 3:11-13.

##### **6. Keep Away From Obvious Areas of Temptation**

*"I will set before my eyes no vile thing"* Psalms 101:3 See also 1 Timothy 6:9-11

##### **7. Be Aware Of Satan's Schemes**

It is important for us to know the tactics that the enemy uses against us so that we are not outwitted by him. 2 Corinthians 2:11 **a.**

**He is a liar** John 8:44

**b. He is a slanderer and accuser** Revelation 12:10

- c. **He is a deceiver** Revelation 12:9
- d. **He is a tempter** Matthew 4:1-11
- e. **He is an oppressor** Acts 10:38
- f. **He is a hinderer** 1Thessalonians 2:18
- g. **He is as a roaring lion** 1 Peter 5:8
- h. **He can transform himself into an angel of light** 2 Corinthians 11:14 As Christians, we are called to live in VICTORY! Through Christ, this victory is ours: **Over The World** 1John 5:4  
**Over The Flesh** Galatians 5:16  
**Over The Enemy** Ephesians 6:11,13

#### MY COMMITMENT

**I thank God for His promise to deliver me during time of temptation. I commit myself to respond to His help which is always available so that I can live in victory. I will share this truth with others also.**

### Chapter 14

## Fellowship

### A. THE PURPOSE OF FELLOWSHIP

The fellowship of Christians together is very important, for it is in our unity together that...

#### 1. The Believer Is Encouraged And Grows In Christ

*"I long to see you so that I may impart to you some spiritual gift to make you strong - that is, that you and I may be mutually encouraged by each other's faith"*

Romans 1:11,12

#### 2. The World Comes To Know That Jesus Was Sent Of God

*"I have given them the glory that you gave me, that they may be one as we are one; I in them and you in me. May they be brought to complete unity to let the world know that you sent me and have loved them even as you have loved me"* John 17:22,23

### B. CONDITIONS OF FELLOWSHIP

#### 1. A Basic Commitment To One Another

*"Be devoted to one another in brotherly love. Honour one another above yourselves"*

Romans 12:10

Without a basic trust there can be no fellowship. The depth of fellowship will vary according to the depth of commitment.

#### 2. Our Commitment Must Be Based On 'Agape'

'Agape' is a one-way love, which loves 'in spite of' not 'because of.' Such a commitment therefore will not be affected by the other person's inconsistent behaviour. *"A new commandment I give you; Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another"*

John 13:34

#### 3. True Fellowship Is Christ-Centered

Our fellowship with one another is founded in our common commitment to Christ.

*“...And our fellowship is with the Father and with the Son, Jesus Christ” 1John 1:3.*

See also Philippians 2:1,2

#### **4. Walking In The Light**

Our fellowship embraces the need to be open, honest and truthful with one another. This at times may mean:

a. **Confessing Our Own Sins to Others, Or lovingly Covering Another's Sin.** *“If we claim to have fellowship with him yet walk in the darkness, we lie and do not live by the truth. But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus, his Son, purifies us from every sin” 1 John 1:6,7. See also Matthew 18:15*

b. **Obedience To The Light** - general and specific commandments God has given,

c. **The Removal Of Any Masks Or False Coverings** So much of the world's fellowship is hypocritical - acting out a role, and is not genuine.

*“Now that you have purified yourselves by obeying the truth so that you have sincere love for your brothers, love one another deeply, from the hearts” 1Peter 1:22*

#### **5. A Genuine Interest In The Other's Well-Being**

There should be no hidden motives of self-gain. Our desire should be to give, not to get.

*“Do nothing out of selfish ambition or vain conceit, but in humility consider others better than yourselves. Each of you should look not only to your own interests, but also to the interests of others” Philippians 2:3,4.*

#### **6. A Willingness To Lay Down One's Life**

*“My command is this; Love each other as I have loved you. Greater love has no one than this, that one lay down his life for his friends” John 15:12,13.*

Life involves more than physical life. It also includes our material possessions, our personal interests and preferences, etc. James 2:15,16. This also means a willingness to openly share of one's self. We can only know people to the extent they are prepared to reveal themselves.

### **C. FELLOWSHIP IN THE CHURCH MEANS...**

#### **1. Sharing All Things**

There were three stages of development in their fellowship in Acts 4:32 - firstly, they were of one heart (spirit), then they were of one soul (mind), and then followed the physical expression of having all things in common.

*“All the believers were together and had everything in common. Selling their possessions and goods, they gave to anyone as he had need” Acts 2:44,45.*

#### **2. Laying down Their Lives**

*“Greet Priscilla and Aquila, my fellow workers in Christ Jesus. They risked their lives for me. Not only I but all the churches of the Gentiles are grateful to them” Romans 16:3,4.*

#### **3. Devoted To Serving The Brethren**

*“You know that the household of Stephanas were the first converts in Achaia, and they have devoted themselves to the service of the saints...” 1Corinthians 16:15.*

#### **4. Being A Channel Of Supply To Others In Need**

*"At the present time your plenty will supply what they need, so that in turn their plenty will supply what you need. Then there will be equality"* 2Corinthians 8:14. See also 1Corinthians 16:17.

**5. Sharing In Suffering**

*"Yet it was good of you to share in my troubles"* Philippians 4:14.

**6. Sacrificial Giving**

*"Out of the most severe trial, their overflowing joy and their extreme poverty welled up in rich generosity. For I testify that they gave as much as they were able, and even beyond their ability"* 2Corinthians 8:2,3.

**7. Practicing Hospitality**

*"Dear friend, you are faithful in what you are doing for the brothers, even though they are strangers to you"* 3John 5. See also Hebrews 13:2.

**8. Building Up And Encouraging One Another**

*"We loved you so much that we were delighted to share with you not only the gospel of God but our lives as well, because you had become so dear to us"* 1Thessalonians 2:8. See also 2Timothy 3:10-14.

**D. RESULTS OF FELLOWSHIP**

The results of fellowship in the early Church were:

A fear of God Acts 2:43

a. Joy Acts 2:46

b. Favour with all people Acts 2:47

c. Addition of new believers Acts 2:47

d. All needs supplied Philippians 4:19

e. Emergence of leadership 1Corinthians 16:15,16

**MY COMMITMENT**

**Through this study I now understand the importance of having fellowship continually with other Christians. Today I commit myself to being a part of a group of believers to whom I will give my loyalty, my love and my service.**

*Chapter 15*

**Generosity**

*"The heavens declare the glory of God; the skies proclaim the work of his hands. Day after day they pour forth speech; night after night they display knowledge"* Psalms 19:1-2. Read also verses 3&4.

From this psalm, we learn that God’s Creation (the heavens and the earth)

**Declare** the glory of God

**b. Proclaim** the work of His hands

**c. Pour forth** speech

**d. Display knowledge** We can learn from God’s Creation if we examine it carefully. Just as there are physical laws

which bring order out of chaos in the universe, God has also put into motion spiritual laws which govern life. One of these is the **Law of Generosity**. This teaches us that

“*whoever sows generously will also reap generously*” 2 Corinthians 9:6

## **A. PARTNERSHIP**

As partners with God, 1Corinthians 3:9; 2Corinthians 5:20; 6:10, it is important for us to understand where responsibilities lie:

### **1. Ownership Is With God**

“*The earth is the Lord’s, and everything in it; the world, and all who live in it*” Psalms 24:1.

See also Psalms 89:11; Job 41:11; 1Chronicles 29:10-14.

We are not owners, but stewards. All ownership is with God. Every single created thing, living or not, ultimately belongs to Him – including everything material and immaterial that we may personally have in this life: possessions, careers or families. He has given us all

things for us to enjoy. 1Timothy 6:17 and when we realize that they still belong to God, we can rest in the assurance that God also has ultimate responsibility for them.

### **2. Stewardship Is With Us**

We are not owners, but stewards. A steward manages and takes care of what belongs to someone else. God owns everything; but as stewards, we manage and take care of it for Him. We have an obligation to be faithful in this stewardship. The Lord holds us accountable for the special responsibility of managing and taking care of the things He has given us (read Matthew 25:14-30). When we understand this Owner-steward relationship that we enjoy with God’s property, then it becomes easy to give.

Before God, stewardship covers every single thing that belongs to us: a.

**Our Life.** Acts 17:25; 1Corinthians 6:19; Galatians 2:20; Job 33:4

b. **Our Time.** Psalms 90:12; Ephesians 5:15-16; Colossians 4:5

c. **Our Talents and Abilities.** 1Peter 4:10; 1Corinthians 12:4-7,11

d. **Our Possessions.** Matthew 6:19-21; Colossians 3:1-2

e. **Our Finances.** 1Timothy 6:6-10, 17-19; Matthew 6:24

f. **The Message of the Gospel.** 1Corinthians 4:1; 9:16-17; 1Timothy 6:20 Even so, many Christians still struggle to give (or tithe), no matter how much they may want to. But the action that releases a believer into the full blessings of good stewardship is SURRENDER – the unreserved submission of one’s entire life, possessions and plans to God’s will and purpose. It is only when we give OURSELVES that we learn what it means to give some of the possessions (or money) God has given us.

## **B. GIVING IN THE EARLY CHURCH**

“*All the believers were together and had everything in common. Selling their possessions and goods, they gave to anyone as he had need ...No one claimed that any of his possessions was his own, but they shared everything they had*” Acts 2:44-45 and 4:32

This basic attitude of the early Christians laid the foundation for every expression of giving that was to come later.

As the number of Christians multiplied, different methods of giving appeared. But all their giving expressed their understanding of STEWARDSHIP – that everything ultimately belongs to God.

### **1. The Church Supported The Needy**

In the early Church, special men were chosen to serve as deacons – helpers – in the distribution of offerings and gifts for the widows and needy. See Acts 6:1-3. These men made it their ministry to channel all the giving to where there was practical need.

### **2. Churches Gave Sacrificially To One Another**

When the Jewish Christians in Jerusalem were in famine, the poor, suffering Gentile church helped them.

*“Out of the most severe trial, their overflowing joy and their extreme poverty welled up in rich generosity. For I testify that they gave as much as they were able, and even beyond their ability”*

2 Corinthians 8:2-3 See also verses 1,4.

### **3. The Church Supported Travelling Ministries**

The apostle Paul travelled from place to place establishing new churches. On some occasions he worked with his hands to provide his support. Acts 18:3; 2Thessalonians 3:7-9. On other occasions the Philippian church showed the true spirit of giving which God commends, by supporting travelling ministries such as Paul.

*“I have received full payment and even more; I am amply supplied, now that I have received ... the gifts you sent. They are a fragrant offering, an acceptable sacrifice, pleasing to God”* Philippians 4:18. Read also verses 15-17.

### **4. Christians Worked To Be Able To Give**

*“he who has been stealing must steal no longer, but must work with his own hands, that he may have something to share with those in need”* Ephesians 4:28

### **5. Giving Was The Proof Of Their Love**

*“At this time, your plenty will supply what they need...Therefore show [by giving]...the proof of your love ...”* 2Corinthians 8:14, 24. See also verses 7-15; 1 Corinthians 16:1-2; 1John 3:17-18.

## **C. GOD’S PRINCIPLES OF GIVING**

In 1Corinthians 10:11, we are told to learn from Israel’s example. We are told to apply the principles given them by God. At the same time we are told to avoid the mistakes Israel (and the leaders) made in the wilderness. In the area of giving, we find some excellent guidelines that can help us in our giving:

### **1. God Expects Us To Begin With A Percentage**

*“Bring the whole tithe (10%) into the storehouse, that there may be food in my house. Test me in this, “says the Lord Almighty, and see if I will not throw open the floodgates of heaven and pour out so much blessing that you will not have room enough for it”* Malachi 3:10.

### **2. We Are To Give Systematically And Regularly**

*“Hezekiah gave orders to prepare storerooms in the temple of the Lord, and this was done. Then they faithfully brought in the contributions, tithes and dedicated gifts..”* 2Chronicles 31:11-12

### **3. We Are To Give The First And The Best To The Lord**

“Honour the Lord with your wealth, with the first fruits of all your crops; then your barns will be filled to overflowing, and your vats will brim over with new wine” Proverbs 3:9-10.

### MY COMMITMENT

**I realize, through this study, the importance of having a generous heart and attitude toward others. Today I commit my self to begin a life of giving by starting to tithe to the Lord’s work. I will also encourage and teach others to do the same.** *“But you are a chosen people, a people belonging to God, that you may declare the praises of him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light”* 1Peter 2:9.

## Chapter 16

# Kingdom Living

### A. CHANGE OF AUTHORITY

We have been delivered from Satan’s dominion (rulership or headship). We are now under a whole new authority - that of the Lord Jesus Christ.

As a believer begins growing in his new life in the Lord, he soon discovers that the only way we enjoy living in God’s Kingdom is in right RELATIONSHIP WITH JESUS. Ephesians 1:17; Philippians 3:10.

At the very beginning of our new life with God, this relationship takes two distinct forms:

#### 1. Saviour

This is the very first relationship we can have with Jesus. We cannot know God as Father or Friend until we first have had a revelation of Jesus as Saviour - the One Who died for us and rescued us from Satan’s kingdom. Jesus has saved us from: **a. God’s Judgment** 1Thessalonians 1:10; 5:9; Romans 5:9.

**b. Satan’s Power** Acts 26:18; Colossians 1:13; Hebrews 2:14; 1John 3:8.

**c. Our Own Selves** Philippians 3:19; 2Corinthians 5:15; Titus 3:3-6; 1Peter 1:18.

*“Although he was a son ... he became the source of eternal salvation for all who obey him”*

Hebrews 5:8-9. See also Hebrews 2:10; 2Timothy 1:10.

#### 2. Lord

Knowing Jesus as Saviour brings us into God’s kingdom, but that is not where our relationship with Him ends. Once we are inside His Kingdom, that relationship takes on dramatic new changes. Now we know Him not merely as Saviour, but as Lord - OUR Lord! He is KING in His Kingdom. Colossians 2:6.

*“Therefore, I tell you that no one who is speaking by the Spirit of God says, ‘Jesus be cursed’; and no one can say, ‘Jesus is Lord,’ except by the Holy Spirit”* 1Corinthians 12:3. See also John 13:13; Romans 1:4; 1Corinthians 8:6; 1Corinthians 4:5. When we enter the Kingdom of Light, we can enjoy what we were created for - a loving relationship with the Lord.

Because of this, when Jesus becomes Lord of our life, we find that His dominion in our lives brings us out of the chaos of sin into divine order and peace. See Colossians 2:9-10; 1Corinthians 8:6.

## **B. THE MODEL CITIZEN**

“Let your attitude toward life be that of Christ Jesus himself ...” Philippians 2:5. Jesus, though King of the Kingdom, became a servant. He is the example of what the true citizen of His Kingdom is like.

“You call me ‘Teacher’ and ‘Lord’ and rightly so, for that is what I am. Now that I, your Lord and Teacher, have washed your feet, you also should wash one another’s feet. I have set you an example that you should do as I have done for you” John 13:13-15. Read also John 13:5-17; Matthew 20:26-28; Luke 22:27.

## **C. SUBJECTS OF THE KING**

As members of Christ’s Kingdom, we enter into a Master-servant relationship with Him Matthew 6:24.

Jesus came to do his Father’s will. Hebrews 10:5-9. In His day-to-day life, He displayed what the lifestyle of the Kingdom is all about: living to please God. Ephesians 5:8-10. We are to have this servant-heart, just as he had a servant’s heart.

Many Christians do not like the concept of being a servant because it seems to make one person inferior to another. But in the Bible, we find four interesting paradoxes:

### **1. In Slavery, There Is Freedom**

“But now that you have been set free from sin and have become slaves to God, the benefit you reap leads to holiness, and the result is eternal life” Romans 6:22. Read also verses 16-23; 12:1; 1Corinthians 7:22; 2Corinthians 7:22; 2Corinthians 3:17; Ephesians 6:6-7; 1Peter 2:16.

### **2. In Being a Servant, There Is Greatness**

“The greatest among you will be your servant. For whoever exalts himself will be humbled, and whoever humbles himself will be exalted” Matthew 23:11-12. See also 20:26-27; Mark 9:35; 10:43; John 12:26.

### **3. In Humility, There is Exaltation**

“Therefore, whoever humbles himself like this child is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven” Matthew 18:14. See also Luke 18:14; Proverbs 29:23; James 4:10; 1Peter 5:5-6; Matthew 19:30.

### **4. In Submission, There is Authority**

The Roman Centurion (a military leader over 100 soldiers) who came to Jesus understood this principle. “...I did not even consider myself worthy to come to you. But say the word, and my servant will be healed. For I myself am a man under authority, with soldiers under me. I tell this one, ‘Go’ and he goes; and that one ‘Come,’ and he comes. I say to my servant, ‘Do this,’ and he does it” Luke 7:7-8.

Because the centurion was under authority, he was able to exercise authority, and readily submitted to Jesus’ authority. Read also verses 1-10; James 4:7. The lifestyle of the kingdom of God is an attitude of SUBMISSION and

OBEDIENCE TO GOD. See Matthew 12:50; Ephesians 6:6; Hebrews 13:21; 1John 2:17; 1Thessalonians 4:1. We submit ourselves to God’s will - NOT reluctantly - because of fear or duty - but rather:

**a. Because Of All God Has Done For Us.** Romans 12:1; Ephesians 4:1; Titus 3:4-7.

**b. Because in Doing so We find Fulfilment.** Psalms 40:8.

**c. Because of Love.** John 14:15; 1John 5:3.

#### **D. FRUIT OF THE KINGDOM**

*“For you know that we dealt with each of you as a father deals with his children, encouraging, comforting and urging you TO LIVE LIVES WORTHY OF GOD, who calls you into His kingdom and glory”* 1Thessalonians 2:11-12. See also 2Thessalonians 1:5. In Matthew 21:43, Jesus said that the Kingdom would belong to those who *“produce its fruit.”* The fruit of the Kingdom is explained in a number of scriptures:

- Love, Joy, Peace. Galatians 5:22-23.
- Goodness, Righteousness, Truth. Ephesians 5:9; James 3:13-17.
- Righteousness, Peace and Joy. Romans 14:17; Hebrews 12:1.

Since we were created by God, we were also made for His Kingdom and its lifestyle. The fruit of the Kingdom is simply the natural outworking of the miracle of the new birth that the Holy Spirit has performed in us. See Galatians 5:22.

Our responsibility as citizens of God’s kingdom is to live like the people we now are! 1Peter 2:11.

*“We also pray that your outward lives, which men see, may bring credit to your master’s name, and that you may bring joy to his heart”* Colossians 1:10 Phillips translation. See also Colossians 2:6; Ephesians 4:1; 6:8-10.

#### **MY COMMITMENT**

**I realize, after studying about Kingdom living, that I am to submit my life to the service of others, just as Jesus did. I commit myself to being a willing, joyful servant of Christ and others.**

### *Chapter 17*

## **Worship**

#### **A. BLESSING OF GOD**

*“Bless the Lord, O my soul: and all that is within me, bless his holy name”* Psalms 103:1. It is awesome to consider that we have the ability to bless our Creator, but time after time in the Scripture we are exhorted to do just that. We bless Him through our praise and worship of Him. See Psalm 34:1-3.

#### **B. PRAISE**

Praise is an expression of admiration and appreciation. When we praise someone, we tell them how wonderful we think they are, or how great their accomplishments are. It is the same with the Lord. Praise has to do with acknowledging God’s character and power.

*“Because your love is better than life, my lips will glorify you. I will praise you as long as I live, and in your name I will lift up my hands”* Psalms 63:3-4.

### **1. Why Do We Praise God?**

**a. Because Of Who He Is.** *“Sing praises to God, sing praises, sing praises to our King, sing praises. For God is the King of all the earth; sing to him a psalm of praise”.* Psalms 47:6-7.

**b. Because Of What he Does.**

*“Praise the Lord, o my soul; all my inmost being, praise his holy name. Praise the Lord O my soul, and forget not all his benefits. He forgives all my sins and heals all my diseases; He redeems my life from the pit and crowns me with love and compassion. He satisfies my desires with good things, so that my youth is renewed like the eagle’s”* Psalms 103:15.

### **2. Who Is To Praise God?**

**a. Those Who Seek God.** *“...they who seek the Lord will praise him...”* Psalms 22:26.

**b. Everything That Has Breath.** *“Let everything that has breath praise the Lord. Praise the Lord”* Psalms 150:6.

### **3. When Do We Praise God?**

**a. At All Times** *“I will extol the Lord at all times; His praise will always be on my lips”* Psalms 34:1.

**b. In Every Circumstance** *“Be joyful always; pray continually; give thanks in all circumstances, for this is God’s will for you in Christ Jesus”* 1Thessalonians 5:16-18.

### **4. Where Are We To Praise God?**

**a. Surrounded By God’s People** *“He [Jesus] says, ‘I will declare your name to my brothers; in the presence of the congregation I will sing your praises’”* Hebrews 2:12.

**b. Among The Nations** *“I will praise you, O Lord, among the nations; I will sing of you among the peoples”* Psalms 57:9.

**c. On Our Beds** *“I will praise you as long as I live... with singing lips my mouth will praise you; I think of you through the watches of the night”* Psalms 63:4-6.

## **C. WORSHIP**

Whereas praise is an expression of admiration and appreciation, worship is an expression of love or adoration. It is possible to admire someone and appreciate what they do without being in love with them. In the same way, worship has to do with our love of the Lord. It can be expressed only with the giving of our whole heart and life to Him.

“To love him with all your heart, with all your understanding and with all your strength, and to love your neighbour as yourself, is more important than all burnt offerings and sacrifices” Mark 12:33.

The religious rituals and ceremonies of Israel in the Old Testament became detestable to the Lord because their heart was far from Him. Isaiah 1:10-15; 29:13. Today, also, God is only interested in the genuine and sincere worship that comes from the heart. “Yet a time is coming, and has now come, when the true worshippers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for they are the kind of worshippers the Father seeks. God is a spirit, and his worshippers **MUST** worship in **SPIRIT and TRUTH**” John 4:22-23. Read also verses 4-26.

### **1. In Spirit**

Our spirit is called the “inner man”. Ephesians 3:16. True worship takes place when the inner man, in response to the promptings of God’s Spirit, expresses love and adoration to God. This can take the form of spoken words, a love song to the Lord, or silent adoration. True worship requires the action of the Holy Spirit on our spirit. So only those who have been “born again of the Spirit” through faith in Jesus Christ can truly worship God. John 3:5-8. The lifestyle of a true worshipper of God is one of OBEDIENCE. Our obedience is an active, practical expression of our love for God. Jesus said in John 14:15 “If you love me, keep my *commandments*”. See also verses 21,23-24. **2. In Truth**

To worship God in truth is to worship Him as the Bible says we should. Nadab and Abihu (the sons of the high priest) offered strange fire before the Lord and died. Numbers 3:4; 26:61. This sober warning illustrates the need to study God’s plan (the Tabernacle of Moses) for priestly ministry.

There was a sacrifice, cleansing, anointing and clothing before worship. Exodus 30:17-38.

You will note in Revelation 1:5-6 that we are “...*washed from our sins in his own blood*” before being made “...*priests unto God.*”

An apostle/teacher in the United States was training lots of leaders how to heal the sick and perform miracles.

A prophetess said to him: “The Lord says to you, ‘How dare you teach those who are unclean to do my works! Stop it!’”

There was much preparation of the priests before they could go into the Holy Place to worship the Lord. To ignore the pattern was perilous. We must worship in truth - in the Bible way.

## **D. EXPRESSIONS OF PRAISE AND WORSHIP IN SCRIPTURE**

### **1. With The Mouth**

- a. Singing.** Psalms 9:2,11
- b. Praising.** Psalms 103:1
- c. Shouting.** Psalms 47:1

### **2. With The Hands**

- a. Lifting.** Psalms 63:4
- b. Clapping.** Psalms 47:1
- c. Musical instruments.** Psalms 150

### **3. With The Body**

- a. Standing.** Psalms 134:1

**b. Kneeling, bowing.** Psalms 95:6

**c. Dancing and leaping for joy.** Psalms 30:11

*“Who among the gods is like you, O Lord? Who is like you - majestic in holiness, awesome in glory, working wonders? ...Sing to the Lord, for He is highly exalted...” Exodus 15:11, 21.*

*“Among the gods there is none like you, O lord ... For you are great and do marvellous deeds; you alone are God ... I will praise you, O Lord my God, with all my heart; I will glorify your name forever” Psalms 86:8, 10 12.*

### **MY COMMITMENT**

**The greatest thing I will ever do in this life or in eternity is to worship God. I determine today to be a true worshipper and to make this my supreme goal in life. I will teach others this vital way of life by my example.**

## **Chapter 18**

# **Prayer**

*“He will call upon me, and I will answer him...and show him my salvation”.* Psalms 91:15-16. The time we spend with the Lord in prayer can release the most dynamic, history changing power the world has ever known.

The Bible describes many different operations of prayer, but in this lesson we are going to look at prayer as an individual first. Our prayer as a Body together can only be as strong as our personal time with the Lord.

### **A. THE SECRET PLACE**

*“But when you pray, go into your most private room, and closing the door, pray to your Father who is in secret; and your Father who sees in secret will reward you in the open”* Matthew 6:6

We have been invited into intimate prayer by none other than the Lord Himself.

This kind of “secret” prayer presupposes and ensures:

- 1. The Right Motives** Matthew 6:5
- 2. A Right Relationship With God As Father** Luke 11:11-13
- 3. A Real Trust In The Lord** Psalms 55:16-17
- 4. A Dispensing Of False Fronts** Mark 7:6-7

As we express our feelings and burdens in conversation with God, it can be in the form of adoration, Psalms 34:1-4, confession 1 John 1:9, request Matthew 7:7, or thanksgiving, Ephesians 5:4-20.

### **B. FIVE COMMANDS RELATED TO PRAYER**

- 1. Watch And Pray Always**

“Be always on the watch, and pray that you may be able to escape all that is about to happen, and that you may be able to stand before the Son of Man” Luke 21:36. See also Mark 13:33-37.

## **2. Pray Lest you Fall Into Temptation**

“Watch and pray so that you will not fall into temptation. The spirit is willing, but the body is weak” Matthew 26:41. **3.**

## **Pray For Workers**

“He told them, “The harvest is plentiful, but the workers are few. Ask the Lord of the harvest, therefore, to send out workers into his harvest field”” Luke 10:2. **4. Pray For**

## **Those In Authority**

“I urge, then, first of all, that requests, prayers, intercession and thanksgiving be made for everyone - for kings and all those in authority, that we live peaceful and quiet lives in all godliness and holiness” 1 Timothy 2:1-2. **5. Pray For Your Enemies**

“Bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you” Luke 6:28.

## **C. WHEN TO PRAY**

The Bible gives many examples of people who prayed, 1 Chronicles 4:10. Many of the heroes of faith can be observed to have had regular times of the day set aside specifically for prayer, often three set periods a day - morning, noon and evening. “As for me, I will call upon God; and the Lord shall save me. Evening, and morning, and noon, will I pray and cry aloud: and he shall hear my voice” Psalms 55:16-17. See also Daniel 6:10. The best example of a daily pattern of regular, whole hearted prayer - prayer that avoided meaningless religious ritual - can be found in the Lord Jesus Himself:

**1. Early In The Morning** Mark 1:35

**2. All Night** Luke 6:12

**3. Before Each Meal** Mark 6:41

## **D. WHAT TO PRAY**

### **1. For Ourselves**

“Jabez cried out to the God of Israel, ‘Oh that you would bless me and enlarge my territory! Let your hand be with me, and keep me from harm so that I will be free from pain.’ And God granted his request” 1 Chronicles 4:10.

### **2. For One Another**

“Therefore confess your sins to each other and pray for each other...” James 5:16.

### **3. For The Ministries In The Body Of Christ**

“Finally, brothers, pray for us that the message of the Lord may spread rapidly and be honoured, just as it was with you” 2 Thessalonians 3:1. **4. For The Sick And Distraught**

“Is any one of you in trouble? He should pray...is any one of you sick? He should call for the elders of the church to pray over him and anoint him with oil in the Name of the Lord. And the prayer offered in faith will make the sick person well; the Lord will raise him up ... pray for each other so that you may be healed...” James 5:14-16. **5. For Those Ensnared In Sin**

“If anyone sees his brother commit a sin that does not lead to death, he should pray and God will give him life...” 1 John 5:16.

## **E. HELP IN PRAYER**

*“In the same way, the Spirit helps us in our weakness. We do not know what we ought to pray, but the Spirit himself intercedes for us with groans that words cannot express”.*  
Romans 8:26

Part of the Holy Spirit’s purpose is to teach us, Luke 12:12, guide us in prayer Romans 8:27, and to help us in our faith, Ephesians 3:16-17.

The Holy Spirit will sometimes anoint a believer’s prayer in a special way, and this is called *“praying in the Holy Spirit”* Jude 20: Ephesians 6:18.

To help us in prayer, the Holy Spirit has also provided a special gift to the believer: The Gift of Tongues - speaking in another language to the Lord in prayer. See 1 Corinthians 12:411.

*“...the prayer of the upright is his delight...He hears the prayer of the righteous”*  
Proverbs 15:8,29.

## **F. YOKEFELLOW**

Two joining together in prayer provides some very real advantages: *“Again I say unto you, that if two of you shall agree on earth as touching anything that they shall ask, it shall be done for them of my Father which is in heaven”* Matthew 18:19.

## **G. THE CHURCH PRAYING**

If there is tremendous power when two people pray, what about the whole assembly of God’s people? See Acts 4:24.

Today God is calling His people to prayer! The Church’s mission is to change individual lives, families, communities, cities and nations through prayer!

## **MY COMMITMENT**

**Through this study I realize the wonderful opportunities of prayer - not only in my relationship with God, but also the supernatural results that follow. I commit myself to make prayer always a priority in my life.**

## *Chapter 19*

# **Heaven**

*“...God is in heaven and you are on earth...Therefore stand in awe of God”* Ecclesiastes 5:2,7.

## **A. WHAT IS HEAVEN?**

### **1. Heaven Is The Dwelling Place Of God**

*“Is not God in the heights of heaven? And see how lofty are the highest stars!”* Job 22:12. See also Deuteronomy 26:15.

### **2. Heaven Is The Throne Room Of God**

*“The Lord has established his throne in heaven, and his kingdom rules over all”* Psalms 103:19 See also Isaiah 66:1.

### **3. Heaven Is The Place Of God’s Glory**

“As I looked, thrones were set in place, and the Ancient of Days took his seat. His clothing was as white as snow, the hair of his head was white like wool, his throne was flaming fire, and its wheels were all ablaze. A river of fire was flowing, coming out of from before him...” Daniel 7:9-10 See also Acts 7:55.

#### **4. Heaven Is The Home Of The Righteous (Believing) Dead**

“Now we know that if the earthly tent we live in is destroyed, we have a building from God, an eternal house in heaven, not built by human hands” 2Corinthians 5:1.

#### **5. Heaven Is The Future Home Of All Believers**

“After this I looked and there before me was a great multitude that no one could count, from every nation, tribe, people and language, standing before the throne. They were wearing white robes and were holding palm branches in their hands. And they cried out in a loud voice: Salvation belongs to our God, who sits on the throne...” Revelation 7:9-10.

### **B. THE NATURE OF HEAVEN**

Heaven is a place far beyond anything we could possibly conceive, 1Corinthians 2:9; 13:12. Heaven is a place of holiness, full of glory and without end.

But though the Bible doesn't describe all the details of what Heaven is like, it does give us some clues as to its nature. It is:

#### **1. A Place Of Great Glory**

“Then the righteous will shine like the sun in the kingdom of their Father...” Matthew 13:43.

#### **2. A Place Of Continual Worship**

“After this I heard what sounded like the roar of a great multitude in heaven shouting: ‘Hallelujah! Salvation and glory and power belong to our God...’ Then I heard what sounded like a great multitude, like the roar of rushing waters and like loud peals of thunder, shouting; ‘Hallelujah! For our Lord God Almighty reigns..’” Revelation 19:1-6, See also Revelation 5:11-12.

#### **3. A Place That Will Never End**

“...and you will receive a rich welcome into the eternal kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ” 2Peter 1:11. See also 1Peter 1:4.

#### **4. A Place Untainted By Evil**

“Nothing impure will ever enter it, nor will anyone who does what is shameful or deceitful, but only those whose names are written in the Lamb's book of life” Revelation 21:27. See also Ephesians 5:5.

The Book of Revelation describes the New Jerusalem, coming out of Heaven as a place without:

- a. **Night.** Revelation 22:5
- b. **Curse.** Revelation 22:3
- c. **Pain.** Revelation 21:4
- d. **Crying, sorrow.** Revelation 21:4
- e. **Death.** Revelation 21:4

This is because the nature of Heaven is a product of the nature of God. Since Heaven is the full manifestation of His presence, what God is like, heaven is a place of holiness, full of glory and without end.

## **C. OUR LINK WITH HEAVEN**

As believers, we now live our lives in a special relationship with Heaven, because:

### **1. We Belong There**

*“But you have come to...the heavenly Jerusalem, the city of the living God. You have come to thousands upon thousands of angels in joyful assembly, to the church of the firstborn, whose names are written in heaven...”* Hebrews 12:22-23. See also Philippians 3:20.

### **2. We Are Enthroned There**

*“And God raised us up with Christ and enthroned us with him in heavenly realms in Christ Jesus”.* Ephesians 2:6. **3. We Have Our Source Of Life There**

*“Praise be to the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has blessed us in the heavenly realms with every spiritual blessing in Christ”* Ephesians 1:3. See also Colossians 3:1-4.

### **4. We Have Our Names Recorded There**

*“However, do not rejoice that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice that your names are written in heaven”* Luke 10:20. See also Hebrews 12:23.

### **5. We Have Been Sent By The One Who Lives There**

*“They are not of the world, even as I am not of it...As you have sent me into the world, I have sent them into the world”* John 17:16,18. See also 2 Corinthians 5:20. **6. We have**

### **Our Eyes Fixed There**

*“For our light and momentary troubles are achieving for us an eternal glory that far outweighs them all. So we fix our eyes not on what is seen, but on what is unseen. For what is seen is temporary, but what is unseen is eternal”.* 2Corinthians 4:17-18. **7. We**

### **Have Our Treasure There**

*“...He has given us new birth into a living hope...into an inheritance that can never perish, spoil or fade – kept in heaven for you...”* 1 Peter 1:3-4. See also Matthew 6:19-21.

### **8. We Are Being Called There**

*“...But one thing I do: Forgetting what is behind and straining towards what is ahead, I press on towards the goal to win the prize for which God has called me heavenwards in Christ Jesus”* Philippians 3:13-14.

Jesus Himself, before returning to Heaven, made a very special promise to every believer: *“Do not let your hearts be troubled. Trust in God, trust also in me. In my Father’s house are many rooms; if it were not so, I would have told you. I am going there to prepare a place for you, and if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come back and take you to be with me that you also may be where I am”* John 14:1-3. See also John 17:24.

## **MY COMMITMENT**

**I decide today to set my affections on things in Heaven, not on things of this earth. I realize my life on earth is only temporary, so I will live by priorities established by this truth. I will share with others the good news about this wonderful eternal home Jesus offers to all who will believe on Him.**

## When Jesus Returns – The Second Coming

*“Whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you have proclaimed the Lord’s death UNTIL HE COMES”.* 1 Corinthians 11:26.

### A. THE PROMISE OF HIS RETURN

The Second Coming of the Lord Jesus to the earth is one of the most important subjects for the Christian. The writers of the New Testament discussed it more than 300 times, and the language used was almost always imperative. The first thing we need to know about the Second Coming is that it is CERTAIN.

#### 1. Jesus Spoke About His Own Return

*“At that time the sign of the Son Of man will appear in the sky, and the nations of the earth will mourn. They will see the Son of man coming on the clouds of the sky, with power and great glory”.* Matthew 24:30. See also John 14:2-3.

#### 2. Angels Foretold It

*“They were looking intently into the sky as he was going, when suddenly two men dressed in white stood beside them. Men of Galilee, ‘they said, ‘why do you stand there looking into the sky? This same Jesus, who has been taken back from you into heaven, will come back in the same way you have seen him go to heaven’”.* Acts 1:10-11.

#### 3. The Early Christians Encouraged One Another With It

*“For the Lord himself will come down from heaven, with a loud command, with the voice of the archangel and with the trumpet call of God, and the dead in Christ will rise first. After that, we who are still alive and are left will be caught up with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. And so we will be with the Lord forever. Therefore encourage each other with these words”.* 1Thessalonians 4:16-18. See also Revelation 1:7.

#### 4. The Holy Spirit Bears Witness Of It

*“Now it is God who has made us for this very purpose and has given us the Spirit as a deposit, guaranteeing what is to come”* 2Corinthians 5:5.

*“But be patient, my brothers, as you wait for the Lord to come. Look at the farmer quietly waiting for his precious harvest. See how he has to possess his soul in patience till the land has had the early and late rains. So must you be patient, resting your hearts on the ultimate certainty. The Lord’s coming is very near”.* James 5:7-8 Phillips Translation. See also Hebrews 10:37.

### B. HOW WILL HE RETURN?

#### 1. Unexpectedly

*“Now, brothers, about times and dates we do not need to write to you, for you know very well that the day of the Lord will come like a thief in the night. While people are saying, ‘Peace and safety,’ destruction will come on them suddenly...”* 1Thessalonians 5:1-3. Read also verses 4-11.

#### 2. Like The Lightning

*“For as the lightning comes from the east and flashes to the west, so will be the coming of the Son of Man”.* Matthew 24:27. See also Luke 17:24. **3. In The Same Way That he Left**

“...This same Jesus, who has been taken from you into heaven, will come back in the same way you have seen him go into heaven”. Acts 1:10-1. **4. With Power And Great Glory**

“At that time they will see the Son of Man coming in a cloud with power and great glory” Luke 21:27.

#### **5. In Full View Of All**

“Look, he is coming with the clouds, and every eye will see him, even those who pierced him; and all the peoples of the earth will mourn because of him. So shall it be! Amen” Revelation 1:7.

### **C. DRAMATIC EVENTS TO TAKE PLACE**

#### **1. The Mystery Of The Ages Will Be Completed**

“...There will be no more delay! But in the day when the seventh angel is about to sound his trumpet, the mystery of God will be accomplished, just as he announced to his servants the prophets”. Revelation 10:6-7. See also Romans 16:25-26.

#### **2. God’s People Will Enter Their Full Glory**

“But our citizenship is in heaven. And we eagerly await a Saviour from there, the Lord Jesus Christ, who, by the power that enables him to bring everything under his control, will transform our lowly bodies so they will be like his glorious body”. Philippians 3:20-21. See also 1 Corinthians 15:35-53.

#### **3. The Dead In Christ Will Be Raised To Life**

“...because we know that the one who raised the Lord Jesus from the dead will also raise us with Jesus and present us with you in his presence”. 1 Corinthians 4:14. See also John 6:40; 11:25.

#### **4. Those Believers Still Alive Will Be Caught Up To Meet Him**

“And he will send his angels with a loud trumpet call, and they will gather his elect from the four winds, from one end of the heavens to the other”. Matthew 24:31. **5. Creation Will Be Set Free From Its Bondage**

“The creation waits in eager expectation for the sons of God to be revealed. For the creation was subjected to frustration, not by its own choice, but by the will of the one who subjected it, in hope that the creation itself will be liberated from its bondage to decay and brought into the glorious freedom of the children of God”. Romans 8:19-21. Read also verse 22 and Isaiah 35:1-7. **6. Every Enemy Will Be Destroyed**

“Then the end will come, when he hands over the kingdom to God the Father after he has destroyed all dominion, authority and power. For he must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet”. 1 Corinthians 15:24-25. See also 2 Thessalonians 1:7-10; 2:8.

#### **7. Satan Will Be Bound**

“And I saw an angel coming down out of heaven, having the key to the Abyss and holding in his hand a great chain. He seized the dragon, that ancient serpent, who is the devil, or Satan, and bound him for a thousand years”. Revelation 20:1-2. Read also verses 3, 7-10. **8. Judgment Will Be Meted Out**

“God is just: He will pay back trouble to those who trouble you and give relief to you who are troubled...This will happen when the Lord Jesus is revealed from heaven in blazing fire

*with his powerful angels. He will punish those who do not know God and do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus. They will be punished with everlasting destruction and shut out from the presence of the Lord and from the majesty of His power.*

2Thessalonians 1:6-9.

### **9. A Kingdom Will Be Set Up That Will Never Be Destroyed**

*“In the time of those kings, the God of heaven will set up a kingdom that will never be destroyed, nor will it be left to another people. It will crush all those kingdoms and bring them to an end, but it will itself endure forever”.* Daniel 2:44. See also Revelation 19:15-16.

## **MY COMMITMENT**

**The Second Coming of Jesus is my great hope for the future. I will tell as many people as possible about Jesus, my saviour, before He returns again. I am, committed to Him and look with excitement for that day of his coming.**

## **Chapter 21**

### **Call Of God**

God has a plan for the life of every individual believer in the Lord Jesus Christ. Not only does His call involve a wonderful purpose for us throughout eternity, but we also have an expression of that call upon the earth now.

*“Who has saved us, and CALLED us with a holy calling ... according to his own purpose and grace...”.* 2Timothy 1:9.

*“Now if we are children, then we are heirs – heirs of God and co-heirs with Christ... And we know that in all things God works for the good of those who love him, who have been CALLED ACCORDING TO HIS PURPOSE”.* Romans 8:17, 28. See also verses 29, 30.

#### **A. GOD HAS CALLED US**

##### **1. From The Foundation Of The World**

*“For he chose us in him before the creation of the world to be holy and blameless in his sight. In love he predestined us to be adopted as his sons through Jesus Christ, in accordance with his pleasure and will”.* Ephesians 1:4-5. See also Ephesians 2:10 and Matthew 25:34.

##### **To Be Separated Unto Him**

*“But you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people belonging to God, that you may declare the praises of him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light”.* 1Peter 2:9. See also Romans 9:23-26.

##### **3. To Fulfil His Purpose**

*“So do not be ashamed to testify about our Lord...who has saved us and called us to a holy life – not because of anything we have done but because of his own purpose and grace...”.* 2Timothy 1:8-9.

See also Romans 8:28 and Philippians 3:14.

#### **B. OUR CALL ON EARTH**

“Paul, a servant of Christ Jesus, called to be an apostle and set apart for the gospel of God”. Romans 1:1.

In describing his own ministry, the Apostle Paul gives us an example of the call that is upon EVERY believer. It has three aspects: **1. The General Calling – “A Slave Of Christ”**

Jesus paid a high price for us, His own life. “For he who was a slave when he was called by the Lord is the Lord’s free man; similarly, he who was a free man when he was called is Christ’s slave. You were bought with a price...”. 1Corinthians 7:22-23. See also 1Corinthians 6:19-20.

When Paul calls himself a slave of Jesus Christ, he is pointing to an even deeper meaning. According to the custom of his day, if a slave came to the time when he could be set free, but because of love for his master chose not accept his freedom, he then received a mark pierced in his ear. This was a sign that he was a “love or bond slave” to his master for life. Exodus 21:5-60; Deuteronomy 15:16-17.

The Apostle Paul, by choice, declared himself a bond slave of the Lord Jesus.

## **2. The Special Calling – “Called To Be An Apostle”**

Just as the Apostle Paul has a special calling upon his life, so does every believer. Paul was called to be an apostle, but there are many different callings in the Body of Christ. See Romans 12:3-8; Ephesians 4:7-16. The special part that God has for us to play will be revealed to us as we earnestly seek His will. **3. The Particular Calling – “Separated**

## **Unto The Gospel”**

Within each special calling there is a particular calling. For example, Peter and Paul were both apostles, but one was the apostle to the Jews and the other to the Gentiles. See Romans 11;13; 1 Timothy 2:7; 1 Corinthians 12;4-11.

We move into our special and particular calling only as we prove ourselves as servants of Christ, for we must first learn to be wholly under the authority of Christ before we can be SENT by Him.

See Matthew 28:18-19.

## **C. WHY DOES HE CALL US?**

### **1. Because The World Is In Darkness**

“We know that we ourselves are children of God, and we also know that the world around us is under the power of the evil one”. 1John 5:18 Phillips Translation. See also Ephesians 6:12 and Colossians 12:13.

### **2. Because People Are Hungry And In Need**

“When he saw the crowds, he had compassion on them, because they were harassed and helpless, like sheep without a shepherd”. Matthew 9:36. **3. To Prove His Wisdom**

“His intent was that now, through the Church, the manifold wisdom of God should be made known to the rulers and authorities in heavenly realms, according to the eternal purpose which he accomplished in Christ Jesus our Lord”. Ephesians 3:10-11. **4. Because Time Is**

### **Short**

“Do you not say, ‘Four months more then the harvest’? I tell you, open your eyes and look at the fields! They are ripe for the harvest!” John 4:35. See also John 9:4.

## **D. WHAT HAPPENS WHEN WE ARE CALLED?**

### **1. We Are Made By Him**

“Come, follow me, Jesus said, and I WILL MAKE YOU fishers of men”.

Matthew 4:19. See also Jeremiah 18:1-10.

### **2. We Are Taught By Him**

“But the Counsellor, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, will teach you all things and will remind you of everything I have said to you”. John 14:26. See also 1Corinthians 2:12 and John 2:27.

### **3. We Are Sent By Him**

“As you sent me into the world, I have sent them into the world”. John 17:18. See also Mark 16:15.

When God calls, He comes and interrupts our lives. Some examples of this in scripture are:

Moses (a shepherd in the desert): “Go, set my people free”. Exodus 3:112.

Samuel (a boy serving in the temple): “Wake up, speak for me”. 1Samuel 3:1-19.

Ezekiel (a captive in a foreign land): “Stand up, I am sending you”. Ezekiel 2:1-7.

Disciples (businessmen, fishermen): “Come follow me”. Matthew 4:1822.

Saul (an enemy of the Church): “Go, I will tell you what you must do”. Acts 9:1-9.

## **MY COMMITMENT**

Now that I realize that God has had a plan for my life even before the foundation of the world, I now make a total commitment to this plan and will follow the Lord all the way. I will teach others also about God’s plan for their lives.

## **TOPICAL CONCORDANCE**

### **Table Of Contents**

#### **A. THE BIBLE-THE INERRANT, INFALLIBLE, INSPIRED**

##### **WORD OF GOD**

**A1. The Bible Declares Itself To Be The Word Of God**

**A2. The Bible Is Free Of Mistakes (*Inerrant*)**

**A3. The Bible Is Not Wrong On Any Subject (*Infallible*)**

**A4. The Words In The Bible Came From God Through Chosen Persons**

**(*Inspired*)**

**A5. Why Should I Study And Obey The Teachings Of The Bible? A6. How Do I Learn What The Bible Teaches?**

#### **B. GOD THE FATHER, SON AND HOLY SPIRIT      B1.**

**How Can I Learn About God?**

- B2. How Does God Reveal Himself To Man?    B3. God's Names Reveal His Character    B4. Nature Of God    B5. Character Of God    B6. What Does God Do?    B7. Fatherhood Of God**
- B8. Deity Of Jesus Christ**
- B9. Jesus Does The Work That Only God Can Do**
- B10. Jesus Is All That God Is**
- B11. Jesus – Fully Human and Fully Divine**
- B12. Holy Spirit As God**
- B13. Work Of The Holy Spirit    C.**

#### **SPIRIT BEINGS**

- C1. Angels – Messengers Of God**
- C2. Demons – Satan’s Angels    C3. Satan – Names and History**
- C4. Satan – Power and Work**
- C5. Demons & Demonology**
- C6. Workers Of Evil And Magic    D.**

#### **SIN/MAN**

- D1. Nature Of Sin**
- D2. Sin And The Law**
- D3. Sin, Trials And Temptations**
- D4. Creation Of Man**
- D5. Condition Of Unredeemed, Fallen People    D6. Redeemed Man And God's Kingdom**

#### **E. SALVATION (REDEMPTION)**

- E1. The Blood Of Jesus (Sufficient For Total Redemption)**
- E2. Means Of Salvation**
- E3. Calling – Foreknowledge – Predestination    E4. Repentance**
- E5. Saving Faith**
- E6. Regeneration (Born Of God)**
- E7. Justification**
- E8. Adoption**
- E9. Baptism In Holy Spirit**
- E10. Perseverance**
- E11. Sanctification – Holiness    E12. Glorification**

#### **F. CHURCH**

- F1. Church – Introduction    F2. The Mission Of The Church**
- F3. Gospel - The Good News**
- F4. The Gospel, As Outlined In Romans**
- F5. The Gospel, As Outlined In Ephesians, Philippians & Colossians**

- F6. False Gospels**
- F7. Church Government**
- F8. Correction & Forgiveness**
- F9. Gifted People In The Church Universal**
- F10. Spiritual Gifts In The Body Of Christ**
- F11. Spiritual Gifts In Church Meetings**
- F12. Spiritual Growth**
- G. GROWING IN CHRIST**
  - G1. Fruit Of The Spirit**
  - G2. Water Baptism**
  - G3. Lord's Supper - Communion – Breaking Of Bread**
  - G4. Worship And Praise** **G5. False Worship**
  - G6. Prayer**
  - G7. Fasting**
  - G8. Giving - Tithes And Offerings**
  - G9. Marriage And The Family**
- H. Death & Endtimes**
  - H1. Physical Death And The State Of The Dead** **H2. Second Coming (Advent) Of Jesus**
  - H3. Resurrection Of The Dead & Final Judgement**
  - H4. Heaven And Hell - Final Destinations**
- I. OTHER TOPICS OF IMPORTANCE**
  - I1. Ten Commandments**
  - I2. Divine Healing Of The Body**
  - I3. Mary - Mother Of Jesus**
  - I4. Name Of Jesus**

**ABBREVIATED NAMES FOR THE BOOKS OF THE BIBLE**

The following abbreviations will be found in the Topical Concordance. With a few exceptions, they are based on Strong's Concordance.

<b>BY ORDER IN BIBLE</b>		<b>BY ALPHABETICAL ORDER</b>	
GE	Genesis	1CH	I Chronicles
EX	Exodus	1CO	I Corinthians
LE	Leviticus	1JO	I John
NU	Numbers	1KI	I Kings
DE	Deuteronomy	1PE	I Peter
JOS	Joshua	1SA	I Samuel
JDG	Judges	1TH	I Thessalonians
Ru	Ruth	1TI	I Timothy
ISA	I Samuel	2CH	II Chronicles

*“Heroes Theological College” “Knowledge Is Power”*

2SA	II Samuel	2CO	II Corinthians
1KI	I Kings	2JO	II John
2KI	II Kings	2KI	II Kings
1CH	I Chronicles	2PE	II Peter
2CH	II Chronicles	2SA	II Samuel
EZR	Ezra	2TH	II Thessalonians
NE	Nehemiah	2TI	II Timothy
ES	Esther	3JO	III John
JOB	Job	AC	Acts
PS	Psalms	AM	Amos
PR	Proverbs	CA	Song of Solomon
EC	Ecclesiastes		(Canticles)
CA	Song of Solomon	COL	Colossians
ISA	Isaiah	DA	Daniel
JER	Jeremiah	DE	Deuteronomy
LAM	Lamentations	EC	Ecclesiastes
EZE	Ezekiel	EPH	Ephesians
DA	Daniel	ES	Esther
HO	Hosea	EX	Exodus
JOE	Joel	EZE	Ezekiel
AM	Amos	EZR	Ezra
OB	Obadiah	GA	Galatians
JON	Jonah	GE	Genesis
MIC	Micah	HAB	Habakkuk
NA	Nahum	HAG	Haggai
HAB	Habakkuk	HEB	Hebrews
ZEP	Zephaniah	HO	Hosea
HAG	Haggai	ISA	Isaiah
ZEC	Zechariah	JAS	James
MAL	Malachi	JDG	Judges
<b>"NEW TESTAMENT**</b>		JER	Jeremiah
MT	Matthew	JOB	Job
MK	Mark	JOE	Joel
LU	Luke	JOH	John
JOH	John	JON	Jonah
AC	Acts	JOS	Joshua
RO	Romans	JUDE	Jude

1CO	I Corinthians	LA	Lamentations
2CO	II Corinthians	LE	Leviticus
GA	Galatians	LU	Luke
EPH	Ephesians	MAL	Malachi
PHP	Philippians	MIC	Micah
COL	Colossians	MK	Mark
1TH	I Thessalonians	MT	Matthew
2TH	II Thessalonians	NA	Nahum
1TI	I Timothy	NE	Nehemiah
2TI	II Timothy	NU	Numbers
TIT	Titus	OB	Obadiah
PHM	Philemon	PHM	Philemon
HEB	Hebrews	PHP	Philippians
JAS	James	PR	Proverbs
1PE	I Peter	PS	Psalms
2PE	II Peter	RE	Revelation
1JO	I John	RO	Romans
2JO	II John	RU	Ruth
3JO	III John	TIT	Titus
JUDE	Jude	ZEC	Zechariah
REV	Revelation	ZEP	Zephaniah

## **A. THE BIBLE - THE INERRANT, INFALLIBLE, INSPIRED WORD OF GOD**

### **TABLE OF CONTENTS - THIS SECTION**

#### **A1. The Bible Declares Itself To Be The Word Of God**

#### **A2. The Bible Is Free Of Mistakes (Inerrant)**

#### **A3. The Bible Is Not Wrong On Any Subject (Infallible)**

#### **A4. The Words In The Bible Came From God Through Chosen Persons (Inspired) A5.**

#### **Why Should I Study And Obey The Teachings Of The Bible?**

#### **A6. How Do I Learn What The Bible Teaches?**

### **1. THE BIBLE DECLARES ITSELF TO BE THE WORD OF GOD**

#### **a) "ALL SCRIPTURE IS GIVEN BY INSPIRATION OF GOD" (2Ti 3:16)**

- “All Scripture” refers to the written Word.

- “All Scripture” refers to the entire Bible (Old and New Testaments).

- Jesus accepted the Old Testament as Scripture (Lu 24:27,44,45; Joh 5:39,46,47) - Peter said Paul's Epistles were Scripture (2Pe 3:15,16).

- Because the Bible is the written Word of God, God's judgment will befall anyone who dares to add to or subtract from 'Vie words... of this prophecy' (Rev 22:18,19).

## **2. THE BIBLE IS FREE OF MISTAKES (INERRANT)**

a) GOD'S SPIRIT GUIDED "*HOLY MEN OF GOD*" (2Pe 1:21) so that the words they wrote (which have been preserved in the Bible) were kept free from error. God's Spirit, by supernatural superintendence, guided these particular writings so that they - said what God wished to be said.

- were written error-free in the original copies.

b) THE BIBLICAL WORDS ARE PROTECTED FROM ERROR BY GOD

*"I, the Lord, keep it, I water it every moment; lest any hurt it, I keep it night and day"* (Isa 27:3)

*"The pass withereth, the flower fadeth; but the word of our God shall stand for ever"*

(Isa 40:8; Mt 24:35)

c) THE OLD TESTAMENT WAS RECEIVED AS FROM GOD, HENCE INERRANT

(Jos 1:8; 2Ki 22:8,11,13)

d) WITHOUT EXCEPTION, FAULT CANNOT BE POUND IN THE SCRIPTURES

Christ said, *"The Scripture cannot be broken"* (Joh 10:35).

- He preached inerrancy, even to the very strokes and accent marks which formed the alphabetical characters in the Hebrew, Aramaic and Greek languages. These were the languages in which the Bible was originally written. "One jot (smallest Hebrew letter) or one little (smallest accent mark over the letter) will by no means pass from the law, til all be fulfilled' (Mt 5:18).

## **3. THE BIBLE IS NOT WRONG ON ANY SUBJECT (INFALLIBLE)**

a) JESUS CERTIFIED OLD TESTAMENT AS ACCURATE

By citing the miracle stories of O.T., Jesus certified them as true, accurate, inerrant and thus infallible. A few examples follow:

- Accepted Genesis as a factual account of creation (Mt 19:4)
- Adam and Eve (Mt 19:4-6; Ge 1:26,27,2:7,18)
- Cain and Abel (Mt 23:35; Heb 11:4; Ge 4:1-15)
- Satan (Lu 11:18; Ezc 28:11-19)
- Noah (Mt 24:37,38; Ge 6:1-14)
- Jonah (Mt 12:39,40; Jon 1:7)
- Lot's wife (Lu 17:32; Ge 19:26)

Jesus took the Bible to be God's Word, true in every word, and entirely trustworthy.

b) CHRIST AND THE APOSTLES ACCEPTED THE OLD TESTAMENT AS INFALLIBLE

Modern-day theologians have cast doubt on the following books. Here is your defense against these enemies of the Bible.

- Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, Deuteronomy - These books were written by Moses. Jesus validated them. See Joh 5:46,47.
- Deuteronomy, the book most attacked - In Mt 4:4,7,10 Christ defeats Satan by quoting from De 6:16 and 10:20.

> Would Jesus have used the words from these books if they were not “...*the sword of the Spirit... the word of God*” (Eph 6:17)?

> No! He would not! These books are the Word of God.

- Isaiah – mentioned in New Testament twenty-one times. Compare a few examples: Mt 15:7-9 and Isa 29:13; Mt 3:3 and Isa 40:3; Ac 8:28-33 and Isa 53:7,8.

> These three quotations come from the three different sections of Isaiah. > The New Testament affirms the unity of the Book of Isaiah and that it is the work of one prophet.

- Daniel – Jesus quotes Daniel as a God-inspired foreteller of the future (Mt 24:15; Mk 13:14).

- Jonah – Jesus validates the Book of Jonah in Mt 12:40, 41.

#### **4. THE WORDS IN THE BIBLE CAME FROM GOD THROUGH CHOSEN PERSONS (INSPIRED)**

a) “*ALL SCRIPTURE IS GIVEN BY INSPIRATION OF GOD...*” 2 Ti 3:16) “*By inspiration of God,*” **theopneustos** in Greek, literally means “*God breathed.*” The author of the Bible is God Himself. He “*breathed*” the words through the mouths and pens of holy men (2Pe 1:21).

b) **DAVID AFFIRMED HIS WRITINGS CAME BY THE SPIRITS INSPIRATION**

David wrote most of the Psalms. He said, “*The Spirit of the Lord spoke by me...*” (2 Sa 23:2; See also I Ch 28:11,12).

#### **5. WHY SHOULD I STUDY AND OBEY THE TEACHINGS OF THE BIBLE?**

a) **FOR SPIRITUAL GROWTH**

- The Scriptures are spiritual food to nourish our spiritual growth (Jer 15:16; Eze 3:1-3; I Pe 2:2; I Co 3:1,2; Heb 5:12-14) b) **TO BE KEPT FROM SIN**

- God's Word will keep you from sin. Sin will keep you from God's Word (Ps 119:9, 11, 133)

c) **TO ENJOY HEALTH AND HEALING**

- Obedience to biblical commandments results in health and healing for our physical bodies (Ex 15:26; Ps 107:20,119-50). d) **TO BE PROSPERED**

- Joshua was the first man to have a Bible. He was promised blessing and prosperity by reading and obeying it (Jos 1:8).

- Meditate on the teaching of the Bible to be fruitful and successful (Ps 1:1-3).

c) **TO BE KEPT ON GOD'S PATH, IN INTELLECTUAL FREEDOM**

- The Scriptures light our path (Ps 119:104,105).

- The Scriptures break intellectual bondage (Ps 119:130).

#### **6. HOW DO I LEARN WHAT THE BIBLE TEACHES?**

“...*but these are written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ*” (Joh 20:31). Jesus said, “*Search the scriptures ...they testify of ME*” (Joh 5:39). Look for Jesus on every page and in every chapter (Lu 24:44).

a) **YOU LEARN BY THE REVELATION OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

- Precede your time of “feeding on the Word” with prayer.

- Ask the Holy Spirit to teach you and anoint your mind to understand (Job 14:26; I Co 2:12-14; I Jo 2:27).

- Pray for the veil to be removed from your eyes and heart so you can understand the Old Testament (2Co 3:14-16).
- Pray for the Spirit to open your understanding (Lu 24:25, 27, 44, 45).
- Pray for "...the Spirit of wisdom and revelation" to be upon your heart and mind as you read the Bible (Eph 1:17,18).

b) YOU LEARN BY REGULAR READING

- Set aside at least 30 minutes every day to READ the Bible.
- Read one Psalm daily. You will read through the Psalms twice a year.
- Read one Chapter in Proverbs daily. You will read through Proverbs once a month. - Read three pages of the Old Testament daily. You will read through the Old Testament once a year.
- Read three pages of the New Testament daily. You will read through the New Testament 3 times a year.
- As you read, use a yellow transparent felt-tip marker pen to highlight verses that speak to your need and bless you.

c) YOU LEARN BY SYSTEMATIC STUDY

- Study the outlines in this topical concordance for 25 minutes daily. - Read every Scripture reference as you study through the outline(s).
- Write notes alongside the verses in your Bible as you study.
- Select one verse out of your 55 minutes of reading and study that was a blessing to you. Use 5 minutes to memorize that verse and the reference. 60 minutes (1 hour) a day — keeps the devil away.

d) SUMMARY OF WHAT THE BIBLE CONTAINS

- **Law** principally occurs in the first five books of the Bible — Genesis through Deuteronomy. Understanding these books is fundamental to all that follows.
- **History** is presented in the Old Testament from Joshua through Esther, and in the New Testament from Matthew through Acts. History is the record of the leading events in the divine/human drama of redemption. Redemption is the central theme of the Bible.
- **Poetry** primarily comprises the books of Job through the Song of Solomon. This is the compendium of devotional and Wisdom Literature of the Bible. It has teaching as well as inspirational value. Many of the chapters in the prophetic books also are written as Hebrew poetry.
- **Prophecy** includes all the books from Isaiah through Malachi in the Old Testament. The book of Revelation in the New Testament and portions of the Gospels, such as the Olivet Discourse, also contain statements concerning the future. These books teach us about God's future plan and purpose for redeemed mankind to rule and reign with Christ (Re 20:4; I Co 6:2).

- **Principles to live by** are contained principally in the New Testament, as well as in Wisdom Literature, i.e., Proverbs and Ecclesiastes in the Old Testament.

e) A BRIEF OVERVIEW /OUTLINE OF WHAT IS IN THE BIBLE

- Creation of the Heavenlies ..... Ge 1:1 - Rebellion of Satan and chaos results ..... Ge 1:2
- Creation or Restoration of earth ..... Ge 1 & 2
- Rebellion of man and social chaos..... Ge 3

- Destruction by the flood ..... Ge 6-10 - Restoration through Noah  
..... Ge 9-10
  - Rebellion at Tower of Babel..... Ge 11:1-9 - Division of the nations  
and languages ..... Ge 11:8-9
  - Choosing of Abram, Isaac, Jacob & Joseph ..... Ge 12 -36
  - Joseph sold as slave into Egypt ..... Ge 37 - 50
  - Israelites alt slaves in Egypt ..... Ex 1-6
  - God chooses Moses and Israel as a nation ..... Ex
  - Disobedient nation..... The Prophets
  - Scattering of the nation ..... Jer; Eze; Da
- REDEMPTION (A NEW ERA OF GRACE)**
- Jesus Christ comes to earth as a man ..... The Prophets and Gospels
  - Mankind crucifies Jesus. .... The Gospels
  - Resurrection of Jesus from the dead ..... The Gospels
  - Pentecost, the choosing of the Church ..... Acts
  - Church persecuted by the world and devil..... Acts & Revelation
  - Resurrection of the dead and judgment..... Letters & Revelation
  - Final separation of good and evil ..... Revelation
  - Heaven, New Jerusalem, New Heavens & earth ..... Revelation
  - Hell and eternal torment ..... Revelation

## **B. GOD THE FATHER, SON AND HOLY SPIRIT**

### **TABLE OF CONTENTS - THIS SECTION**

- B1. How Can I Learn About God?**
- B2. How Does God Reveal Himself To Man? B3.**
- God's Names Reveal His Character**
- B4. Nature Of God B5.**
- Character Of God B6.**
- What Does God Do? B7.**
- Fatherhood Of God**
- B8. Deity Of Jesus Christ**
- B9. Jesus Does The Works That Only God Can Do**
- B10. Jesus Is All That God Is**
- B11. Jesus - Fully Human And Fully Divine**
- B12. Holy Spirit As God**
- B13. Work Of The Holy Spirit**

### **1. HOW CAN I LEARN ABOUT GOD?**

#### **a) THE BIBLE TEACHES US ABOUT GOD**

- See The Bible - Section A
- Dependability of God and His Word ..... Lu 21:33
- Authority of God and His Word ..... Mt 4:4; Joh 10:35

- Bible was inspired by the Holy Spirit ..... 2Ti3:16 - Bible was written by direction of the Holy Spirit..... 2Pe 1:21

**b) BIBLE USES HUMAN LANGUAGE AND IMAGES TO DESCRIBE GOD TO US**

- Arm & Hand ..... Ex 3:20; 6:6; De 4:34; 5:15
- Face..... Ge 4:14; 33:10; Isa 59:2
- Eyes & Ears..... Isa 37:17; Ps 11:4; 34:15; Pr 15:3; Zec 4:10
- Coming & going..... Ge 11:5; Isa64:1-3; Ps 18:9-19
- Voice of God heard by Adam & Moses..... Ge 3:9,10; De 4:12 > We can hear the voice of God..... De 5:24; Ac 22:14

**c) GOD APPEARS TO PEOPLE IN HUMAN FORM**

- In visions..... Da 7:9,13; Re 4:3; 5:7 -  
To people directly
  - > Adam..... Ge 3:8-10 > Jacob..... Ge 32:24-30 > Abraham.... Ge 18
  - > Joshua..... Jos 5:13-15 > Daniel..... Da 3:25
- God as the man Jesus ..... Mt, Mk, Lu & Joh

**d) BY LOOKING AT WHAT HE HAS CREATED (IN NATURE)**

**SEE TEACHING PASSAGE (Ro 1:18-25)**

- The heavens tell the glory of God ..... Ps 19:1
- Creation shows His eternal power and deity ..... Ro 1:20
- Our conscience and heart know God's law ..... Ro 2:14-16
- The fruitfulness of the land is a witness ..... Ac 14:15-17
- God's Wisdom and Knowledge ..... Ps 19:1-6; 104
- God's Power and Majesty..... Ps 18:7-15; 29; 66:1-7

**e) SOME PROBLEMS WITH SEEING GOD IN NATURE**

- Nature is not enough for full salvation
  - > unbelievers' minds are blinded by Satan ..... 2Co 4:4
  - > a preacher is needed ..... Ro 10:14
- The Fall of Adam has spoiled God's image in nature
  - > pain in childbirth ..... Ge 3:16
- > painful work; thorns and thistles ..... Ge 3:17-18 > all creation is waiting to be renewed..... Ro 8:18-25

**f) GOD IS FULLY REVEALED IN JESUS CHRIST**

- See Jesus - Sections B8, B9, B10, B11
- Son reveals God to whom He wills ..... Mt 11:27; Lu 10:22
- He who has seen Me has seen the Father ..... Joh 14:6-9; 10:30 - The Word was God.. The Word was made Flesh ..... Joh 1:1-14
- Therefore He must reveal Himself to us ..... 1 Sa 3:21 - Some things remain a secret ..... De 29:29
- Some things He reveals to man ..... Am 3:7; Eph 3:5
- Adam heard the voice of God ..... Ge 3:8
- Moses heard the voice of God but didn't see God ..... De 4:12

- No mortal man can see God and live ..... Ex 33:20 > Note: Because God is Spirit, He must reveal Himself to us. h) WHY DOES GOD REVEAL HIMSELF TO PEOPLE?
  - To save them in times of great need ..... 2 Sa 22:7; Ps 18:6
    - > Noah .....saved from the flood..... Ge 6:1 - 9:17 >
  - Abram..... saved from heathen worship..... Ge 12:1-22:19 > Moses
  - ..... to save from slavery..... Ex 3: -14: - To bring salvation..... Mt 1:21
  - To destroy the works of Satan ..... I Jo3:8
  - To warn of future events ..... Am 3:7; Re 1: - 22:
2. HOW DOES GOD REVEAL HIMSELF TO MAN?

a) BY MIRACLES

- God's miracles glorify Him..... Nu 14:22
  - > cause some to believe..... Joh 2:23
  - > yet some will not believe..... Joh 12:37 - True

Miracles

- > Burning bush.....Ex 3: > Plagues on Egypt ..... Ex 4:-12:
- >Red Sea ..... Ex 14: > Crossing Jordan River ..... Jos 3:
- > Elijah..... IKi 17:-18;; 2Ki 1: > Isaiah ..... 2Ki 20:
- >Elisha ..... 2Ki2:-6;; 13:
- Miracles of Jesus ..... seeSectionB9
- Miracles of Disciples ..... see Section F9, F11
- Some miracles done by Satan's power ..... De 13:1-3; Ex 7:9-12; Re 13:14; 16:14; 19:20

b) BY JUDGMENTS

- Pharaoh..... Ex 4: -12: - Nebuchadnezzar.....Da 4:28-37
- Belshazzar..... Da 5: - Ananias and Sapphira..... Ac 5:1-11 -
- Herod..... Ac 12:22-23 - All workers of Evil..... Re20:10,14-15 c) IN

DREAMS AND VISIONS

- Some Dreams and Visions bring revelation of God and His plans.
  - > the following books contain many visions and dreams revealing God... Ezekiel; Daniel; Zechariah; Amos; Nahum; Acts; Revelation
- Dreams and Visions need to be interpreted by God
  - > for Joseph..... Ge 41:15-16 > John's visions..... Re 1:20; 7:13-14
  - > for Daniel ..... Da 2:27-28 > Peter's vision ..... Ac 10:11-15,34-35
- God's standard for judging Dreams, Visions and Prophecies
  - > test all things with the Word of God ..... Ps 138:2; Pr 30:5-6
  - > don't believe every spirit ..... I Jo 4:1-3
  - > submit all things to counsel ..... Pr 11:14; 15:22
    - > wait for independent confirmation..... Mt 18:16;ICo 14:29;2Co 13:1
    - > God allows false words to test our love..... De 13:3 >
- if a word leads you away from God it is false..... De 13:1-3 > even a real miracle can be false..... De 13:1-3

- > the commandments of God are above dreams, etc. De 13:4
- > we must remove falsehood from our midst..... De 13:5 - Dreams and Visions can bring comfort
  - > to Abram ..... Ge 15:1
  - > to Paul..... Ac 18:9
- Dreams and Visions can bring warnings from God
  - > Abimelech about Sara..... Ge 20:3
  - > Joseph about Mary..... Mt 1:20
  - > Joseph about Herod..... Mt 2:13
  - > Laban about Jacob.. Ge 31:24
  - > wisemen about Herod ..... Mt 2:12
  - > Pilate's wife..... Mt27:19 -
- Dreams and Visions can bring guidance
  - > Gideon overhears a dream..... Jdg 7:13-15
  - > Joseph led from Egypt to Israel..... Mt 2:19
  - > Joseph led to Galilee..... Mt 2:22
  - > Ananias led to pray for Paul..... Ac 9:10
  - > Paul prepared for Ananias'coming..... Ac 9:12
  - > Paul led to go to Macedonia..... Ac 16:9
- Dreams and Visions may be false
  - > if one's own heart desires evil..... Jer 14:14; Jer 23:16
  - > dreams can be used to excuse a falsehood..... Jer 23:25,32
  - > some dreams lead us away from God..... Jer 23:27
  - > we must not follow these false dreams..... Jer 27:9
  - > our own dreams may be false..... Jer 29:8
  - > false vision can lead to fake prophecy..... Eze 13:7
  - > false religions give false dreams and visions..... Zec 10:2
- Some Dreams and Visions are pure fantasy
  - > due to hunger and thirst..... Isa 29:8
  - > product of an overactive mind..... Ec 5:3,7
  - > some dreams are strictly fleshly..... Jude 1:8
  - > alcohol and drugs cause false visions and dreams.. Isa 28:7
- d) IN A DREAM ...HE MAY SPEAK..... Job33:15-18 - Old Testament
  - > Abimelech..... Ge 20:3-7
  - > Laban..... Ge 31:24
  - > Solomon..... IKi 3:5-15
  - > Daniel..... Da 7
  - > Jacob..... Ge 28:12; 31:10
  - > Joseph..... Ge 37:5-9
  - > Nebuchadnezzar..... Da 2:131; 4:5,8
- New Testament
  - > Joseph..... Mt 1:20-21; 2:13,19-20
  - > Wise men..... Mt 2:11-12
  - > Pilate's Wife..... Mt 27:19
- e) IN A VISION ...HE MAY SPEAK..... Job 33:15-18; Ps 89:19 - Old Testament
  - > Abraham..... Ge 15:1
  - > Jacob..... Ge 46:2
  - > Isaiah..... Isa 6:1-8
  - > Daniel..... Da 2:19; & Chapt 7,8,10
  - > Amos..... Am 7:1-9; 8:1-6; 9:1
  - > Zechariah..... Zec1:8;3:1;4:2;5:2;6:1
  - > Ezekiel..... Eze 1,8,10, etc.

- > Nahum..... Na 1:1                      > Nebuchadnezzar..... Da 2:28 -
- New Testament
- > Paul.....Ac 9:3,6,12; 16:9; 18:9; 22:18; 27:23; 2Co 12:1-4
- > Ananias..... Ac 9:10-11      > Cornelius..... Ac 10:3
- > Peter..... Ac 10:9-17      > John..... Revelation

### **3. GOD'S NAMES REVEAL HIS CHARACTER**

In the language of the Hebrews many different words are used to name God. In English they are translated as 'God' or 'Lord' or 'Lord God'. Below are some of the Hebrew names for God and their meanings:

<u>NAME</u>	<u>MEANING</u>
a) JEHOVAH.....	The Self-Existent One
First used with God as Creator.....	Ge 2:4
- Jehovah-Jireh.....	The Lord will Provide
Abraham told to offer Isaac.....	Ge 22:13-14
- Jehovah-Rapha.....	The Lord that Heals
God's promise to those who hear and obey Him.....	Ex 15:26
- Jehovah-Nissi.....	The Lord our Banner (in War)
Moses defeats the Amalekites.....	Ex 17:15
- Jehovah-Shalom.....	The Lord our Peace Angel of God
chooses Gideon.....	Jdg 6:24
- Jehovah-Ra-ah.....	The Lord my Shepherd
David's relationship with God.....	Ps 23:1
- Jehovah-Tsidkenu.....	The Lord our Righteousness
Name of the Lord When He Came to earth.....	Jer 23:6
- Jehovah-Shammah.....	The Lord is Present Name of the City
of God.....	Eze 48:35
- Jehovah-Sabaoth.....	The Lord of Hosts (Armies)
God as defeating the Babylonian armies.....	Jer 28:2
- Jehovah-M'Kaddesh.....	The Lord my Sanctifier
A holy Sabbath as a sign of holy people.....	Ex 31:13

- b) ELOHIM or EL..... The Strong One God, the Creator..... Ge 1:1  
 - El Elyon..... Most High God Melchizedek meets Abraham..... Ge 14:18,19 - Here God is described as Possessor of Heaven and Earth.  
 This is first mention of giving a tithe..... Ge 14:20 Lucifer said I will be like El Elyon..... Isa 14:14  
 - El Shaddai..... Giver of Strength  
 Abraham at age 99 is promised a son..... Ge 17:1  
 - El Olam..... The Eternal One  
 Abraham makes a treaty with the Philistines..... Ge 21:33  
 - El Gibbor..... The Powerful One  
 Prophecy about the coming Messiah..... Isa 9:6  
 Also called Wonderful Counselor  
 Everlasting Father  
 Prince of Peace..... Isa 9:6  
 c) ADONAI..... Master Abram  
 complains to God about being childless..... Ge 15:2 d) I AM THAT I AM or I AM..... Ex3:14 Moses wonders how he will identify God to the Israelites.... Ex 3:13  
 e) JEALOUS..... Ex34:14  
 God opposes idol worship  
 f) FATHER..... see Section B7  
 g) JESUS (SAVIOR)..... see Section B8,B9,B10,B11  
 h) HOLY SPIRIT..... see Section B12.B13

#### 4. THE NATURE OF GOD

##### a) FORM OF GOD

- Mystery of godliness is great..... I Ti 3:16  
 - Who can probe the limits of the Almighty..... Job 11:7-8 - All three are Divine  
     > Father..... see Section B7  
     > Son..... see Section B8, B9, B10, B11  
     > Holy Spirit..... see Section B12, B13 - All three are in Unity  
     > God is One..... De 6:4-5; Mk 12:29; Jas 2:19  
     > Jesus says that He and the Father are one..... Joh 10:30  
     > "Let US make man in OUR image"..... Ge 1:26  
     > "Whom shall I (singular) send, and who will go for US?" (plural)..... Isa 6:8  
     > "baptize in the name (singular) of Father, Son & Holy Spirit" (plural)..... Mt 28:19-20 b)  
 SPIRIT- GOD IS A SPIRIT..... Joh 4:24

- thus no graven images, idols.....De 5:8; Isa 42:8; I Jo 5:21 thus spiritual worship required..... Joh 4:24
- thus false religion is worthless.....see Section F6, G5 - thus spiritual rebirth necessary..... Joh 3:3-8; I Co 15:50

c) SELF-EXISTENT

- In the beginning God..... Ge 1:1; Joh 1:1
- the Father has life in Himself, so also the Son..... Joh 5:26
- He is the fountain of life..... Ps 36:9; Jer 17:13
  - > He is the giver of natural life..... Ge 2:7
  - > He is the giver of the born-again life..... Joh 3:6; I Co 15:45
  - > He is the giver of eternal life..... Re 21:6

d) UNIQUENESS & ONENESS OF GOD

- the "only God"..... Joh 5:44; Jude 25
- the Lord is one..... De 4:35; Mk 12:29
- none before and none after..... Isa 43:10-13; Re 1:8
- one God..... 1Co 8:4; 1Ti 2:5
  - > only one way to Him, His way..... Joh 14:6
  - > worship and obey only Him..... Ex 20:2-3; Heb 5:9

**5. CHARACTER OF GOD**

a) THE GOODNESS OF GOD.....Mt 19:16-17

b) BEHOLD THE GOODNESS & SEVERITY OF GOD.... Ro 11:22

c) HOLY..... Re 4:8

- There is no one holy as the Lord..... I Sa 2:2; Re 15:4
- God is holy, perfect..... Le 19:2; Mt 5:48
  - > we are to share in His holiness..... Heb 12:10,14; I Pe 1:16
  - > the Holy Spirit comes to make us holy..... Ro 15:16
- Holiness is beautiful not austere..... 2Ch 20:21; Ps 29:2
  - > see also Sanctification – Holiness..... Section E11

d) RIGHTEOUS AND JUST..... Re 16:5; 19:2

- God hates sin..... Heb 1:8-9
- No unrighteousness in His kingdom..... I Co 6:9-10
  - > see also..... Job 34:12; Ps 7:9; 116:5; 119:137
- We are to share in His righteousness..... I Jo 3:7
  - > we too are to hate sin..... Heb 12:4; I Jo 3:8-9

e) LOVING AND MERCIFUL..... Joh 3:16;Ps 69:16;La 3:22-23

- God is love..... I Jo 4:8; Tit 3:4-5
  - > we are to share His love..... Le 19:18; Lu 10:27; Ro 13:9; Ga 5:14
- God's perfect love for us casts out fear..... I Jo 4:18
- We approach God with confidence..... Heb 4:16

- Nothing can separate us from God's love..... Ro 8:38-39 - Teaching passage..... I Co 13:4-7

f) FAITHFUL AND TRUE..... Isa 25:1; Re 3:14; 19:11

- God is true in spite of man's deceitfulness..... Ro 3:4; Joh 17:3
- God Who promised is faithful..... Heb 10:23; 11:11
- We trust God to preserve us..... I Th 5:23-24; 2Ti 1:12
- God is faithful to make an escape from sin..... I Co 10:13
- Faithful people are hard to find..... Pr 20:6
- God seeks faithful men, like Himself..... Re 2:10; 17:14; 2Ti 2:2
  - > Moses..... Nu 12:7
  - > David..... I Sa 22:14
  - > Daniel ..... Da 6:4
  - > Jesus..... Re 19:11
  - > Epaphras, Tychicus, Onesimus..... Col 1:7; 4:7,9
- God preserves the faithful..... Ps 31:23
- God watches over the faithful..... Ps 101:6 - God rewards a faithful servant..... Mt 25:21

g) GIVING

- God gives
  - > all Scripture..... 2Ti 3:16
  - > His only begotten Son..... Joh 3:16; Ro 8:32
  - > the Holy Spirit..... Lu 11:13; I Th 4:8; Ro 5:5
  - > repentance..... 2Ti 2:25
  - > His gift of eternal life..... Ro 6:23; IJo 5:11
  - > grace to the humble..... I Pe 5:5; Jas 4:6
  - > rest to the weary..... Mt 11:28
  - > wisdom..... Da 2:23; Jas 1:5
  - > to us victory through Jesus..... I Co 15:57
  - > to us ability to minister..... I Pe 4:11; Eph 3:7
  - > food to every creature..... Ps 136:25
  - > ability to produce wealth..... De 8:18
  - > power for earthly rulership..... Da 2:37
- We should share in God's character of Giving
  - > see Giving..... Section G8

h) THE GREATNESS OF GOD

OMNISCIENT...OMNIPRESENT...OMNIPOTENT...ETERNAL...UNCHANGING i) GOD IS WISE, ALL-KNOWING (*OMNISCIENT*)..... Ro 16:27 - Therefore we trust our lives to Him.

- The Lord is a God Who knows..... 1Sa2:3
- His wisdom is profound..... Job 9:4
- Beyond human understanding..... Ps 139:4-6; Ro 11:33
- Character of Godly Wisdom..... Jas 3:17
  - > pure..... not mixed with falsehood
  - > peaceable..... does not start conflict

- > gentle..... not harsh or hard
- > merciful..... reveals God's love, not law
- > no favoritism..... doesn't work for good of self or friends

> no hypocrisy..... means what it says

#### Character of Ungodly Wisdom

- > worldly, fleshly, devilish wisdom..... Jas 3:14-16
- > is foolish to God..... I Co 3:18-20
- Wisdom is available for believers..... Jas 1:5-7; Col 1:9; Eph 1:17
- > Christ is our wisdom..... I Co 1:24; Col 2:2,3
- > Word of Christ is our wisdom..... Col 3:16 -

Spiritual Gift of Word of Wisdom..... Section F11

j) GOD IS EVERYWHERE (*OMNIPRESENT*)..... Ps 139:7-12 - Therefore we can pray anywhere and know God hears us.

- Fills everything in every way..... Eph 1:22-23
- Not far from any one of us..... Ac 17:27-28; Jer 23:23
- In the grave, in heaven..... Ps 139:8; Am 9:2-3 - We cannot hide from Him..... Jer 23:24
- This does NOT mean God is IN everything. God condemns people for:
  - > worshipping idols or devils..... Isa 2:8-11; 20-21; Re 9:20
  - > worshipping creation or creatures..... Ro 1:25
  - > worshipping angels..... Col 2:18; Re 22:8-9
- > worshipping spirits of the dead..... Le 20:6; De 18:9-11; Isa 8:19 - Note: We pray with confidence..... Jer 33:3

k) GOD IS ALL POWERFUL (*OMNIPOTENT*)

- He is the Creator of the heavens and earth..... Ge 1:1
- In Him all things hold together..... Col 1:17
- His power is vast..... Job 9:4
- Therefore He is able to save and deliver..... Isa 50:2
- All things are possible with God..... Mt 19:26; Jer 32:17
- Is anything too hard for God?..... Jer 32:27 - Weakness of God is stronger than men..... I Co 1:25
- We are to share His strength..... Joe 3:10; 2 Co 12:10; Heb 11:34
  - > in God's grace..... 2 Ti 2:1
  - > in His power..... Eph 6:10
  - > to defeat Satan..... 2 Co 10:3-5 >

in faith..... Ro 4:20 > to be

strong and do exploits..... Da 11:32 l) GOD IS

ETERNAL..... I Jo 5:20 - From

everlasting to everlasting..... Ps 90:1-2 - The

Beginning and the End..... Re 22:13

- Who is, was, is to come..... Re 1:8

- Nonebefore.-.none after..... Isa 43:10
- We can share His eternal life..... Joh 3:15-16; Ro 6:23; I Jo 5:11-13
- He is able to keep what we commit to Him..... 2Ti 1:12 m) GOD IS UNCHANGING..... Mal 3:6 - Therefore His offer of love is completely trustworthy.
- Jesus Christ the same yesterday, today, forever..... Heb 13:8  
Does not change like shifting shadows.....Jas 1:17
- We shall be changed to be like Him..... I Jo 3:2; I Co 15:51-53

## **6. WHAT DOES GOD DO?**

### **a) INTRODUCTION**

- In the beginning God created the heavens..... Ge 1:1 > This is probably when the angels were created.
- The creation of the earth and the near heavens..... Ge 1:1-31 > deals with the earth and the region near the earth b) CREATION
- God created the universe from nothing..... Ge 1:1; Isa 42:5; Am 5:8;  
> God can (and will) remake everything..... Isa 65:17; Re 21:1
- It was very good when created..... Ge 1:31 > the problem of evil comes after this creation period > the problem of evil comes from man, not from God.
- Creation is attributed to
  - > the Father..... Ro 11:36
  - > the Son, the Word..... Joh 1:1-3
  - > the Holy Spirit..... Ge 1:2
- God created all human life.....Isa 42:5; Zec 12:1
- God created all spiritual forces and powers.....Col 1:16-17
  - > God alone can destroy spirits..... Mt 10:28; Lu 12:4-5
- God created by His spoken Word..... Ge 1:3; Ps 33:6,9; Heb 11:3
  - > according to God's will, plan & wisdom..... Eph 1:11; Re 4:11 - Since God alone is Creator of EVERYTHING, we must not worship the stars, spirits, idols, people, plants or animals..... Ro 1:20-25

### **c) CONTINUING PROVISION AND PRESENCE**

- God sustains all things by His Word..... Heb 1:3
- He is near to all of us..... Ac 17:27-28
  - > He cares especially for believers..... Heb 13:5
  - > Like Jacob, we may be unaware of God's presence..... Ge 28:16
- We live because of God's continued provision of life..... Ps 36:6
- God provides for the needs of all.....Ps 23:1-6; 147:1-9; IPe 5:6-7; Mt 5:45; 6:25-34; Ac 14:17
- God protects and watches over us..... Ge 28:15;De 32:11; Isa 25:4; Mt 23:37; Joh 17:11; Php 4:6-7; 2Th 3:3; Jude 24-25

- God will sometimes overrule the natural order by the miraculous..Section B2. d) GOD OFFERS SALVATION TO ALL..... Section E
- e) GOD IS IN CONTINUING RELATIONSHIP TO PEOPLE AS:
  - Father..... see Fatherhood of God..... Section B7
  - Creator..... see Creation..... 6.b) above - Husband..... to Israel.....Jer 3:20
  - King..... see Kingdom of God..... Section D6
  - Judge..... see Death and Endtimes..... Section H

DO NOT COPY

- Savior..... see Salvation..... Section E
- Teacher..... see Holy Spirit/Word of God..... Section B12.B13 - Bridegroom & Husband.....see Death and Endtimes..... Section H

#### f) GOD WILL RECREATE THE HEAVENS

- AND THE EARTH..... Re 21:5
- First heaven and first earth will pass away..... Re 21:1
- New heaven and a new earth..... Re 21:1,5; Isa 65:17
  - > no more sorrow, death, pain..... Re 21:4 -
- We too will be made like Jesus..... I Jo 3:2

### 7. FATHERHOOD OF GOD

The peoples of Bible lands gave great reverence and respect to their Fathers. The term was used to reverence Abraham, Isaac and Jacob; the Patriarchs — who were the FATHERS of the nation (Lu 3:8; John 8:39). Hence the word "Father" was a Title of highest honor. The teachings of the Bible in regard to "Father" can only be understood in this context.

#### a) MEANING OF "FATHER"

- "Father" often means the first or the originator of something.
  - > Jabal, father of those in tents who raise livestock.. Ge 4:20 > Jubal, father of all who play the harp and flute..... Ge 4:21 - "Father" means he who transmits his nature to his "children".
    - > You are our Father, we - day. You - potter..... Isa 64:8
- "Father" means the one who is the authority..... Mk 13:32
- Earthly children inherit their bodies and souls from their fathers and mothers. Jesus is the "begotten Son" of God the Father.

Jesus' Spirit is the Spirit of God..... Lu 135; Joh 3:16; Col 2:9

#### b) GOD AS "FATHER" OP ALL MEN

- Your Father, your Creator..... De 32:6; Mal 2:10; Joh 1:18
- Father of our spirits..... Heb 12:9
- Father to the fatherless..... Ps 68:5
- God thought we would call Him "Father"..... Jer 3:19
- Church leaders not to use "Father" as a "Title" to gain honor..... Mt 23:9

#### c) GOD AS LOVING FATHER OF ALL BELIEVERS

- See also Adoption..... Section E8
- That we would share in His nature of holiness..... Le 20:8; I Pe 1-2 - Father of all that believe..... Ro 4:11
- Jesus calls God "our Father"
  - > I am returning to My Father and your Father..... Joh 20:17
  - > your Father in heaven..... Mt 5:16,45
  - > your Father in heaven will give good gift..... Mt 7:11
  - > an impartial Father..... I Pe 1:17
  - > our Father in heaven..... Mt 6:9; Lu 11:2 -

Apostles call Him our Father

- > spirit of adoption, whereby we cry  
"Abba, Father.." ..... Ro 8:15; Ga 4:6
  - > great love of the Father-we, children of God ..... I Jo3:1
- > our fellowship is with the Father ..... I Jo 1:3
- d) GOD AS FATHER OF JESUS, HIS ONLY BEGOTTEN SON
  - Jesus represents the heavenly Father exactly..... Php 2:5-6; Heb 1:3
    - > Messiah (Jesus Christ) is called  
"Everlasting Father" ..... Isa 9:6 - Father God
- speaks of Jesus:  
Today I have become your Father..... Ps 2:7; Heb 1:5
- Father sent His Son to be the Savior of the world..... I Jo 4:14
- Jesus speaks of God and to God as His Father
  - > Abba, Father..... Mk 14:36
  - > Father if Thou art willing..... Lu 22:42
  - > Father forgive them..... Lu 23:34
  - > ye blessed of My Father..... Mt 25:34
  - > no one knows the Father except the Son..... Mt 11:27
  - > I and the Father are one..... Joh 10:30
  - > the Father loves the Son..... Joh 3:35
- e) AS OUR HEAVENLY FATHER, GOD RELATES TO US IN MANY WAYS
  - He loves us.....2Th 2:16; Joh 16:27
    - > He sent Jesus to die in our place (forgiveness).....Ga 1:4
    - > He raised Jesus from the dead (to bring us life).....Ga 1:1
  - He corrects and punishes us.....Heb 12:5-7; Re 3:19
  - He blesses us with spiritual blessings..... Eph 1:3
    - > the gift of the Holy Spirit comes from Him..... Ac 2:33
  - He is above all, through all and in us all..... Eph 4.-6
    - > He is deserving of all our glory..... Php 4:20; Re 7:12

## 8. DEITY OF JESUS CHRIST

Many people have gone astray and formed religious cults because they deny that Jesus was God, manifest in the flesh.

See also False Gospels..... Section F6

### a) WHAT DOES JESUS SAY ABOUT HIMSELF?

- He came FROM HEAVEN and IS IN HEAVEN..... Joh 3:13
- He claims to be PRESENT EVERYWHERE..... Mt 18:20
- He says he is LORD even of the Sabbath of God..... Mk 2:27-28
  - > this shows Jesus' authority over the things of God
- He calls God His Father.....Joh 5:17-18
  - > the meaning is that He is equal with God..... Joh 5:17-18
- He is one with the Father; therefore He is God..... Joh 10:30-33
- Jesus says He came in His FATHER'S NAME..... Joh 5:43 - To see and know Him is to

- SEE & KNOW THE FATHER.....Joh 14:7-11
- He speaks with the same
- AUTHORITY AS SCRIPTURE..... Mt 5:21-22,27-28
- He uses the title -I AM..... Joh 18:5-8
    - > "I AM" is God's title..... Ex 3:14
  - He talks of His EXISTENCE BEFORE ABRAHAM.....Joh 8:58
  - He claims to be KING and final JUDGE..... Mt 25:31-46
    - > Old Testament has The Lord, Jehovah, as Judge... Ge 18:25; Joe 3:12 - He claims
- ALL POWER IN HEAVEN & ON EARTH..... Mt 28:18-20
- Son of Man... His angels... His kingdom..... Mk 13:26-27; Mt 13:41
    - > angels are called the angels of God..... Lu 12:8-9; 15:10 > the Kingdom is called the Kingdom of God..... Mt 6:33; Mk 1:14 b) WHAT DO OTHERS SAY ABOUT JESUS?
  - Paul writes "*Christ, who is GOD over all*"..... Ro 9:5
  - Jews said He claimed to be SON OF GOD..... Joh 19:7 - Apostle John said He MADE HIMSELF EQUAL WITH GOD..... Joh 5:18 - Teachers said He claimed to
- DO WHAT ONLY GOD DOES.....Mk 2:5-7 - Described as
- ETERNAL, the CREATOR, He was GOD..... Joh 1:1-5
- Thomas calls Him "*My LORD and my GOD*"..... Joh 20:28
  - The UNIVERSE WAS MADE through Jesus..... Heb 1:2; Joh 1:3; Col 1:16
  - Jesus is the EXACT REPRESENTATION OF GOD..... Heb 1:3
  - Jesus SUSTAINS ALL OF CREATION..... Heb 1:3; Col 1:17
  - Jesus is WORSHIPED BY ANGELS..... Heb 1:6
  - the Son is called 'GOD'..... Heb 1:8
  - He is FOREVER..... Heb 1:12
  - He is SUPERIOR TO ANGELS, he is not an angel..... Heb 1:4; IPe 3:22
  - He is SUPERIOR TO MOSES..... Heb 3:1-6
  - He is SUPERIOR TO THE HIGH PRIESTS of Old Testament.....Heb 4:14-5:10 - He is in VERY NATURE GOD..... Php 2:6-11
  - He is the IMAGE OF THE INVISIBLE GOD..... Col 1:15-20
  - In Christ the FULLNESS OF DEITY LIVES
- INBODILYFORM..... Col2:9
- The term "LORD" is used both of the Father and the Son
    - > the Father..... Mt 1:20; 9:38; 11:25; Ac 17:24; Re 4:11
    - >the Son.....Lu 2:11; Joh 20:28; Ac 10:36; 1 Co2:8; Re 19:16
- c) HE IS THE OBJECT OF DIVINE WORSHIP AND ACCEPTS IT
- MAGI worship Him.....Mt 2:11

- DISCIPLES worship Him..... Mt 14:33 - Canaanite woman worships Him..... Mt 15:25
- The healed man worships Him..... Joh 9:38 - Two MARY'S worship Him..... Mt 28:9
- DISCIPLES worship Him after the ascension..... Lu 24:52
- The ANGELS of God worship Him..... Heb 1:6
- The FOUR LIVING CREATURES and the 24 ELDERS worship Him..... Re 5:8
- d) WHAT DOES GOD THE FATHER SAY ABOUT HIM?
  - Father-Son relationship.....Mt 3:17; Mt 17:5; Joh 8:16-19; I Jo 5:9
    - > this relationship implies equality with God..... Joh 5:17-18

**9. JESUS DOES THE WORKS THAT ONLY GOD CAN DO**

a) HE FORGIVES SINS, WHICH ONLY GOD CAN DO—

Mt 9:2-7                      Mk 2:5-12      Lu 5:20-26

b) MIRACLES OF JESUS    MATTHEW    MARK            LUKE    JOHN

-Authority Over Nature

- > water to wine..... 2:7-11
- > first catch of fish..... 5:4-9
- > storm stilled..... 8:23-27..... 4:37-41..... 8:22-25
- > multiplied food..... 14:15-21..... 6:35-44..... 9:12-17..... 6:5-14
- > walked on water..... 14:25-27..... 6:47-51..... 6:19-21
- > multiplied food ..... 15:32-38 ..... 8:1-9
- > money from fish..... 17:24-27
- > fig tree cursed..... 21:19..... 11:12-23
- > 2nd catch of fish..... 21:4-7

- Authority Over Satan & Demons

- > demoniac in synagogue..... 1:23-27..... 4:32-36
- > demoniac..... 8:28-34..... 5:1-17..... 8:26-39
- > demoniac (mute)..... 9:32-33
- > demoniac (blind & mute)12:22..... 11:14
- > young girl..... 15:22-28..... 7:25-30
- > afflicted child..... 17:14-18..... 9:17-29..... 9:37-43
- > spirit of infirmity..... 13:10-17

- Authority Over Sickness and Physical Infirmities

- > Peter's mother-in-law. 8:14-15..... 1:29-31..... 4:38-39
- > leper.....8:2-4..... 1:40-45..... 5:12-15
- > Centurion's servant..... 8:5-13..... 7:2-10
- > invalid ..... 5:5-18
- > made blind to see..... 9:27-31..... 9:1-38
- > made blind to see..... 20:30-34..... 10:46-52..... 18:35-43
- > paralytic.....9:2-8..... 2:3-12..... 5:18-26 > shriveled hand..... 12:10-15..... 3:1-6..... 6:6-11
- > bleeding stopped..... 9:20-22..... 5:25-34..... 8:43-48

- > deaf & dumb..... 7:32-37
- > dropsy..... 14:2-6
- > Malcus' ear.....22:50-51
- Authority Over Death
  - > widow's son..... 7:11.17
  - > Jarius' daughter..... 9:18-26..... 5:35-43..... 8:41-56
  - > Lazarus..... 11:1.45
  - > resurrection of Jesus... 28:1-20..... 16:1-14..... 24:1-53..... 20:1-31

**10. JESUS IS ALL THAT GOD IS**

**a) GOD THE CREATOR**

Ge1:1      Ge2:7  
 Job 33:4    Ps33:6  
 Ps 104:30    Isa 40:28  
 Isa 44:24    Isa 45:11-18  
 Mal 2:10

**+ JESUS THE CREATOR**

Joh 1:3,10      I Co 8:6  
 Eph 3:9      Col 1:12-17  
 Heb 1:8-12      Re 4:8-11  
 Re 10:6      Re 14:6-7  
 Re 21:5-7      Re 22:3  
 Re 7:17

**b) GOD IS THE REDEEMER & SAVIOR + JESUS IS THE REDEEMER & SAVIOR**

Ps 78:34-35    Isa 47:4  
 Isa 44:6, 24    Isa 43:3-11  
 Isa 45:21      Isa 49:26  
 Ps 106:21      Lu 1:46-47  
 I Ti 1:1      Tit 1:1-4

I Jo4:14      I Pe 2:21-24  
 Ac 20:28      Ga 3:13  
 Lu 24:21-29      Lu 2:10-11  
 Joh 4:40-42      Ac 13:23  
 Php 3:20      I Ti 1:1,2

**I Ti 4:10      Tit 2:10-13      Tit 1:4**

**I Pe 1:10-11    Jude 25    c) GOD IS COMING**

**+ JESUS IS COMING**  
 Zec 14:3-5      I Th 4:13-18  
 Ps 50:1-6

I Th 3:11-13      Mt 25:31-46  
 Tit 2:11-13      Re 19:11,16

**ROCK**

**+ JESUS IS THE ROCK**

De 32:3-4      1 Sa2:2  
 2 Sa 22:2      Ps 18:2  
 Ps 31:1-4      Ps 78:35  
 Ps 89:26      Isa 17:10

Mt 16:17-19      Ac 4:11-12  
 Nu 20:1-11 with      I Co 10:4  
 Isa 28:16 with      Eph 2:20-22

**I Pe 2:6-8    e) GOD IS FIRST AND LAST + JESUS IS FIRST AND LAST**

Isa 41:4      Isa 43:10-11  
 Isa 44:6-8      Re 1:8

Re 1:17  
 Re 22:13    f)GOD:I AM & I AM HE



- > human likeness ... Jesus Christ is Lord..... Php 2:7,11 -
- Human attributes with divine title
  - > virgin will birth a son... called "God with us" ..... Mt 1:23; Isa 7:14
  - > blood of Jesus called "God's own blood" ..... Ac 20:28
  - > God as Spirit does not have "blood". Here the "blood" of Jesus and His divinity is so close that we see we have "God's own blood".
- > crucified...the Lord of glory..... I Co 2:8 - Divine attributes with human title
  - > He came from heaven... the Son of Man..... Joh 3:13
  - > Son of Man to ascend into heaven..... Joh 6:62
  - > human ancestry-God over all..... Ro 9:5

## 12. HOLY SPIRIT AS GOD

### a) NAMES THE BIBLE USES FOR THE HOLY SPIRIT

- Spirit..... Mk 1:10; Ga 5:5; Re 22:17
- Holy Spirit..... Isa63:10-11;Lu11:13; ITh 4:8
- Spirit of God.....Ge 1:2; Joe 2:28; Ro 8:14; I Co 3:16
- Spirit of the Father..... Mt 10:20
- Spirit of the Son..... Ga 4:6
- Spirit of Jesus Christ..... Php 1:19
- Spirit of Christ..... I Pe 1:11
- Spirit of the Lord..... 2 Co 3:17; Isa 63:14
- Spirit of Grace..... Heb 10:29
- Spirit of Truth..... Joh 14:17; 15:26; I Jo 5:6
- Spirit of Life..... Ro 8:2
- Spirit of Glory..... I Pe 4:14
- Spirit of Adoption..... Ro 8:15
- Comforter.....Joh 14:16; 16:7
- Spirit of Wisdom, Understanding, Counsel, Might, Knowledge and Fear of the Lord..... Isa 11:2

### b) HIS NAME IS USED THE SAME AS GOD

- Lie to Holy Spirit..... Ac 5:3
  - > lie to God..... Ac 5:4
- Temple of Holy Spirit..... 1 Co 6:19,20
  - > temple of God..... 1 Co 3:16,17
- Holy Spirit raised Jesus from the dead..... Ro 8:11
  - > God raised Jesus from the dead..... Ac 2:24,32
- Preaching with the Spirit's power..... I Co 2:4 > preaching with God's power..... I Co 2:5

### c) HOLY SPIRIT HAS THE CHARACTERISTICS OF GOD

- Holy Spirit as Creator..... Ge 1:2
- Holy Spirit knows all things..... I Co 2:10-11; Joh 16:13

- Holy Spirit is all-powerful..... Lu 1:35; Ro 15:19
- Holy Spirit is eternal..... Heb 9:14
- d) HOLY SPIRIT IS A "PERSON", NOT SOME "FORCE" OR "INFLUENCE" FROM GOD
- Bible uses "he" not "it"..... Joh 16:13-14 uses "who" not "what"..... Eph 1:13-14 - Jesus says "another comforter", like Himself..... Joh 14:16 - Spirit teaches.....Joh 14:26
- Spirit decides to whom to give gifts..... I Co 12:11
- Spirit intercedes for us with groanings..... Ro 8:26
- It is wrong to grieve (resist) the Holy Spirit..... Eph 4:30; Ac 7:51
- It is wrong to blaspheme against the Holy Spirit.....Mt 12:31; Mk 3:29

### 13. WORK OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

During the Old Testament times the Father was most prominent. During His time on earth Jesus, the Son, was most prominent. Now, during the Church age, the Holy Spirit is most prominent. a) OLD

#### TESTAMENT MINISTRY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

- Involved in creation..... Ge 1:2
- Giving of prophecy..... Eze 2:2; 8:3; 11:1-5
  - > Balaam..... Nu 24:2-9
  - > Saul..... I Sa 10:6,10
  - > David..... Ac 1:16 -
- Giving of skills
  - > building skills to Bezaleel..... Ex31:2-5
  - > for administration in government
  - Joseph..... Ge 41:38-44
  - Moses & the 70 elders.....Nu 11:14-17,25-29
  - Othniel.....Jdg 3:9-10      Gideon..... Jdg 6:34
  - Samson..... Jdg 14:19,15:14      Saul..... I Sa 10:10
  - David..... I Sa 16:13
- Changing lives producing
  - > justice, righteousness & peace..... Isa 32:15-20
  - > devotion to the Lord..... Isa 44:3-5      >
- new heart..... Eze 36:26-28

#### b) HOLY SPIRIT'S RELATIONSHIP TO THE SCRIPTURES

- Author of the Scriptures
  - > Holy Spirit led men to speak for God..... 2 Pe 1:20-21
  - > all Scripture is "God-breathed" (Spirit)..... 2 Ti 3:16
  - > Spirit speaks through the Scriptures..... Re 2:7,11,17,29
- Interpreter of God's Wisdom..... I Co 2:9-14; Eph 1:17; Joh 15:26-16:15

#### c) MINISTRY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT DURING JESUS' TIME ON EARTH

- The Holy Spirit's Ministry with Jesus

- > Jesus was conceived by the Holy Spirit..... Lu 1:35; Mt 1:18
- > Jesus received the Spirit at His baptism..... Lu 3:21-22
- > Jesus was led by the Spirit to battle Satan..... Mk 1:12; Mt 4:1
- > Jesus walked in power by the Spirit..... Lu 4:14
- > Jesus preached with the Spirit's anointing..... Lu 4:18
- > Jesus cast out demons by the Spirit..... Mt 12:28
- > Jesus rejoiced in the Spirit..... Lu 10:21
- > Jesus was raised from the dead by the Spirit..... Ro 8:11 -

**John the Baptist**

- > was filled with the Spirit before birth..... Lu 1:15
- > saw the Holy Spirit remain on Jesus..... Mt 3:16; Joh 1:32 > said

Jesus would baptize in the Spirit..... Mk 1:7-8

**d) CHURCH AGE MINISTRY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

- Spirit reveals that more than Israel is included in God's Kingdom

- > mystery that Gentiles are included..... Eph 3:5-8

> outpouring of the Spirit on all nations..... Joe 2:28 with Ac 2:16-18 e) A

**TEACHING PASSAGE** about the Holy Spirit..... Joh 14:16 -16:15

- Sent by the Father in Jesus'Name..... Joh 14:26

- Sent by Jesus from the Father..... Joh 15:26

- Testifies about Jesus..... Joh 15:26-27

- He makes sinners feel guilty for sin..... Joh 16:7-8

- He guides us in truth..... Joh 16:13 - He declares the Son and the Father..... Joh 16:14-15

**f) A TEACHING PASSAGE**

about the work of Holy Spirit..... Ro 8:1-39

- freed from the law of sin and death..... Ro 8:2

- we fulfill the law by walking in the Spirit..... Ro8:4

- gives strength to our physical bodies..... Ro 8:11

- we have peace and life by the Spirit..... Ro 8:5-6

- our evil deeds destroyed by the Spirit..... Ro 8:13

- helps us to pray in our weakness..... Ro 8:26 - sons not slaves of God by the Spirit..... Ro 8:15-17

**g) HOLY SPIRIT in Ephesians - How do I know I belong to God?**

We are marked in Christ by the seal of the Holy Spirit..... Eph 1:13-14 - How does the Spirit help us?

Helps us know God by giving us wisdom & revelation..... Eph 1:17 - How can I gain access to God the Father in Heaven?

We have access to the Father by the Holy Spirit..... Eph 2:18 - How can God live amongst us, His Church and temple?

God lives in our midst by His Spirit..... Eph 2:22 - How did

God reveal that the Gentiles are forgiven in Jesus? God's Spirit revealed it to the apostles and prophets.....Eph 3:4-6 - How can we be strengthened so

that Christ can dwell in our hearts? God's Spirit in our inner being strengthens us.....Eph 3:16-17 - How can we live at peace with God's Spirit in us?

By getting rid of such things as bitterness and malice..... Eph 4:30-32 - What is God's will for my life?

Be filled with the Spirit..... Eph 5:17-18

- What part of the Armour of God is more than defense?

The Sword of the Spirit (the Word of God)..... Eph 6:17

Praying in the Spirit.....Eph 6:18

- Holy Spirit makes salvation reality to us/experiential in us

> convicts us of sin, righteousness & judgment.....Joh 16:7-8

> must be born of the Spirit.....Joh 3:3-6; Tit 3:5;

> Spirit then fills/indwells believer..... Ac 2:4; Eph 5:18; ICo 6:19

> empowers us to live free from sin.....Ro 8:2

> empowers us to do the ministry of God.....Joh 14:11-17; Ac 1:8;I Co 2:4

> guides us and teaches us.....Joh 14:26; 16:13

> produces fruit of Spirit in the believer.....Ga 5:22-23

## **C. SPIRIT BEINGS**

### **TABLE OF CONTENTS - THIS SECTION**

#### **C1. ANGELS - MESSENGERS OF GOD**

#### **C2. DEMONS-SATAN'S ANGELS C3.**

#### **SATAN - NAMES AND HISTORY C4.**

#### **SATAN - POWER AND WORK C5.**

#### **DEMONS & DEMONOLOGY**

#### **C6. WORKERS OF EVIL AND MAGIC**

### **1. ANGELS - MESSENGERS OF GOD**

#### **a) WHO ARE THE ANGELS?**

Angels are mentioned frequently in the Bible, but not for the purpose of teaching us about angels themselves. Rather we learn about their involvement with God and His purposes.

- The word "angel" means "messenger" in both the Hebrew and Greek.

- Not to be worshiped..... Jdg 13:16-18; Col 2:18;  
Re 19:10; 22:8-9

- There are two classes of angels, good & bad.....Re 12:7 > for bad angels see  
Section C2 and Demonology Section C5 - Angels are also referred to as:

> watchers.....Da 4:13,17,23

> angels of heaven.. .Mt24:36 > heavenly host.....Lu2:13

> spirits.....Zee 6:5; Heb 1:4,14

> sons of God.....Job 1:6; 2:1; 38:7

> principalities, powers, thrones, dominions, authorities

- .....Col 1:16;Ro 8:38;I Co 15:24;  
Eph 6:12; Col 2:15
- Three Angelic Beings are named in the Bible
    - > Gabriel.....Da 8:16; 9:21; Lu 1:11-20,  
26-38
    - > Michael.....Da 10:13,21; 12:1; Jude 9;

DO NOT COPY

- Re 12:7
- > Satan (with many other names).....see Section C3
- Spiritual Beings are of different ranks or orders
  - > Celestial dignities.....2Pe 2:10-11
  - > Seraphs..... Isa 6:2,6
  - > Cherubims..... Ge 3:24; Ex 25:18; Ps 18:10; Eze 10:2-9
- Satan was a cherub..... Eze 28:14-16
  - > Archangel..... ITh 4:16; Jude 9
- They are created by God the Father and Son.....Ne 9:6; Col 1:16
  - > before creation of man..... Job 38:1-7
- Spiritual beings (not flesh & blood).....Eph6:12;Hebl:14;Ps 104:4
  - > but often appear in visible, human form..... Ge 18:2-33; 19:1-22; Jdg 6:11-22; Joh 20:12
  - > we may entertain angels without knowing it.....Heb 13:2
- Very many.....De 33:2; Da 7:10; Mt 26:53; Lu 2:13; Heb 12:22
- Mighty in power.....2Ki 19:35; Ps 103:20; 2Th 1:7; 2Pe 2:11; Isa 37:36
- Wise, but not all-knowing.....2Sa 14:20; Mt24:36; IPe 1:12 -
- Christ Jesus is far superior to angels.....Heb 1:4-2:15
- b) WHAT DO GOOD ANGELS DO?**
- Worship and praise God.....Heb 1:6; Re 5:11-12
- Law of Moses given via angels.....Ps 68:17; Ga 3:19; Ac 7:53
- Are subject to Jesus.....Eph 1:20-22; Col 2:10; IPe 3:22
- They minister to the heirs of salvation.....Heb 1:7,14
  - > Their help is obtained by prayer to God.....Mt 26:53; Ac 12:5-7
- They execute God's judgment.....2Sa 24:16; 2K 19:35; Ps 35:5-6; Ac 12:23; Re 16:1
- They are endtime harvesters.....Mt 13:39-41,49-50; 24:31
- Watch over children.....Mt 18:10
- Protect the people of God.....Da 6:22; Ps 34:7- 91:11
- Will appear with Jesus at His 2nd coming.....Mt 16:27; 25:31;Mk 8:38; ITh 4:16; 2Th 1:7
- Announced great events in Jesus'life
  - > conception..... Lu 1:31                      > birth..... Lu 2:10-12
  - > resurrection..... Lu 24:23                > ascension....Ac 1:10,11
  - > second coming..... Ac 1:11
- c) ANGELS MINISTERED TO MANY PEOPLE**
- Hagar, when she first left Sarah.....Ge 16:7-13
- Lot, before Sodom was destroyed.....Ge 19:1-22

Hagar and Ishmael.....	Ge 21:17-19 - Abraham, on the mountain with Isaac.....	Ge 22:11-18
Jacob, in vision with ladder.....	Ge 28:12	
> in vision regarding Laban's sheep.....	Ge 31:11	
> after he left Laban to meet Esau.....	Ge 32:1	
- Moses, at the burning bush.....	Ex3:2	
- Israel, with the pillar of cloud.....	Ex14:19-20	
> to lead them.....	Ex 23:20-23; Nu 20:16	
- Balaam and his donkey.....	Nu 22:22-35	
- Joshua and Israel.....	Jdg 2:1-5	
- Gideon, to choose him to lead Israel.....	Jdg 6:11-22	
- Samson's parents.....	Jdg 13:2-23	
- David, when he numbered the people.....	2Sa 24:15-17; ICh 21:16-30	
- Elijah, to strengthen him.....	IKi 19:5-8	
- Assyrians, to kill them.....	2Ki 19:35; 2Ch 32:21; Isa 37:36	
- Shadrach, Meshach & Abednego, in fire.....	Da 3:25-28	
- Daniel, in the lion's den.....	Da 6:22	
> angel Gabriel to show the future.....	Da 8:16; 9:21	
- Zechariah is shown much by angels.....	Zee 1:9; 4:1-6	
- Joseph, husband of Mary.....	Mt 1:20-21 > go to and return from Egypt.....	
Mt 2:13; 2:19		
- Jesus, angels minister to him.....	Mt 4:11; Mk 1:13	
- Children have their angel.....	Mt 18:10	
- Women, at the tomb.....	Mt 28:2-8; Joh 20:11-13	
- Zacharias sees Gabriel in the templ.....	Lu 1:11-19 - Mary, mother of Jesus, sees Gabriel.....	
Lu 1:26-38		
- Shepherds, at Jesus' birth.....	Lu 2:8-16	
- Jesus, praying and weeping in garden.....	Lu 22:43	
- Sick, to stir up water of healing.....	Joh 5:4	
- Apostles, to release them from prison.....	Ac 5:19-20	
- Philip, to witness to the Ethiopian.....	Ac 8:26	
- Cornelius, to call for Peter.....	Ac 10:3-8 - Peter, to escape Herod's prison.....	
Ac 12:6-11		
- Herod, to strike him and kill him.....	Ac 12:21-23 - Paul, before the shipwreck.....	
Ac 27:23-24 - John, many places in the book of.....	Revelation	

## **2. DEMONS-SATAN'S ANGELS**

### **a) INTRODUCTION**

- some evil angels have been rejected by God..... 2Pe 2:4; Jude 6
- Evil spirits may dwell in people..... Mt 12:43-45; Mk 1:26; 5:9; 7:24-30; 9:14-27; 16:9

- Danger for unbelievers to deal with spirits..... Ac 19:12-16
- Demons called deceiving spirits..... ITi 4:1
  - > Never believe what demons say, they lie.....Joh 8:44;
  - > Don't talk to demons - cast them out.....Mk 16:15-18
- Demons believe there is a God..... Jas 2:19
- Can perform miraculous signs .....Re 16:14; 2Th 2:9-12;  
Mt 24:24; Ex 7:11,22

**b) BELIEVERS HAVE POWER/AUTHORITY OVER DEMONS**

- Greater is Jesus in us than Satan in the world.....IJo4:4
- Demons could not enter pigs without permission.....Mt 8:30-32
- Apostles given power over demons..... Lu9:1
- Seventy others appointed to cast out demons..... Lu 10:1,17
- All disciples empowered to cast out demons.....Mt 10:1; Mk 16:17
- Promised power to command evil spirit..... Lu 10:18-20
- Paul cast out a spirit of divination.....Ac 16:16
- Demons cast out by word of faith & power.....Lu4:32-36

**3. SATAN-NAMES AND HISTORY**

**a) NAMES USED TO DESCRIBE SATAN REVEAL HIS CHARACTER  
(MEANINGS OF THE NAMES ARE IN BRACKETS)**

- Lucifer (Angel of Light)
  - > his name while he was in heaven..... Isa 14:12
- Satan (Opponent)..... Mt 4:10; ICh 21:1;  
Job 1:6; Zec 3:1
- Serpent, or Old Serpent.....Ge 3:1,4; Re 12.-9
- Dragon, Serpent, Devil, Satan.....Re 12:9; 20:2
- Devil (False Accuser)..... Mt 4:1,5,8; Eph 6:11-12;  
Re 12:9
- Tempter..... Mt4:3; ITh3:5
- Beelzebub (Dung-God).....Mt 12:24; Mk 3:22
- Prince of devils or demons.....Mt 12:24; Mk 3:22
- Evil One.....Mt13:19
- Prince of this world.....Joh 12:31,14:30; 16:11
- Murderer, Liar.....Joh 8:44
- God of this world system or age.....2Co 4:4; Joh 12:31;  
14:30; 16:11
- Belial (Worthlessness) 2Co 6:15
- Prince of the power of the air.....Eph 2:2
- Adversary, the devil (Enemy)..... IPe 5:8
- Deceiver..... Re 12:9
- Accuser of our brothers .....Re 12:10
- Possibly, these refer to Satan

- > angel of the Abyss or Pit.....Re 9:11
- > Apollyon, Abaddon (Destroyer).....Re 9:11
- b) SATAN IS COMPARED TO
  - A Serpent.....Ge 3:1; Re 12:9,20:2
  - A Hunter of birds (fowler)..... Ps 91:3
  - A Planter of weeds..... Mt 13:25
  - A Wolf.....Joh 10:12 - A Roaring Lion..... IPe5:8
- c) GENERAL HISTORY OF SATAN

There is much teaching about Satan in the Bible.

  - He is a created being..... Eze 28:13 - He was called "Lucifer" in heaven.....Isa 14:12
  - Anointed by God as guardian cherub.....Eze 28:14 > on the holy mount of God..... Eze 28:14
    - > model of perfection (wisdom and beauty).....Eze 28:12,15
    - > in the Garden of God.....Eze 28:13
  - Originally in heaven but was cast out..... Lu 10:18
  - Sinned against God.....IJo 3:8
  - Sin was revealed in him..... Eze 28:15
    - > because of pride of his beauty.....Eze 28:17
  - Cause of Satan's fall from God's favor.....Isa 14:12-20
    - > I will ascend to heaven.....Isa 14:13 >
  - I will raise my throne above the stars of God..... Isa 14:13 > I will sit enthroned..utmost heights.....Isa 14:13 > I will ascend above the clouds..... Isa 14:14 > I will make myself like the Most High..... Isa 14:14
  - Ruler of evil spirits, evil angels, demons.....Mt 12:24-28 - Some believe Satan wanted to be in charge of God's creation before the creation of Adam.
  - Satan claimed that world belonged to him.....Mt 4:8-9
    - > Adam was given rulership of earth by God.....Ge 1:28
  - He deceived Eve in the garden of Eden..... Ge 3:1-7
  - He is cursed by God.....Ge 3:14 - He is the enemy of man.....Ge3:15
  - In Job's time, Satan had access to God.....Job 1:6
    - > he is still called accuser of our brothers.....Re 12:10
  - He tempted Jesus unsuccessfully..... Mt 4:3,4 - May appear as an angel of light..... 2Co 11:14
- d) THE FINAL END OF SATAN AND HIS ANGELS
  - Saints are to judge angels..... ICo 6:3
  - Satan will be made powerless by God..... Ge 3:15; Re 20:10
  - Jesus said he saw Satan fall from heaven..... Lu 10:18
    - > Satan is Prince of the power of the air..... Eph 2:2

- > Satan is expelled from the mount of God..... Eze 28:16
- > Satan is seen as thrown to the earth..... Eze 28:17; Re 12:10-13
- > Satan is chained for a thousand years..... Re 20:1-3
- Satan is cast into lake of fire..... Mt 25:41; Eze 28:18-  
Re 20:10
- No hope for their redemption.....Jude 6; 2Pe 2:4; Mt 25:41
  - > everlasting fire is prepared for him..... Mt 25:41

#### 4. SATAN-POWER AND WORK

##### a) IS A PERSONALITY, NOT SOME FORCE OR INFLUENCE

- Interacts with Jesus in the temptation..... Mt 4:1-11
  - > he can speak..... Ge 3:1;Mt 4:3
- Jesus calls him a murderer, liar..... Joh 8:44
- He is cunning, disguises himself..... 2 Co 11:3 14
- Interacts with God..... Job 1:6-12; 2:1-6
- He walks, roars..... I Pe 5:8 - He can be chained..... Re 20:1-3

##### b) POWER AND WORK OF SATAN AND HIS FALLEN ANGELS

- Opposes and afflicts the righteous..... Job 1:12-19,2:5-7; Zec 3:1 > with disease..... Lu 13:16; Mt 17:15-18 > with demons..... Mk 5:15; 6:13; 16:9 - Attempts to destroy men
  - > with temptations..... I Ch 21:1; I Th 3-5
    - }Eve..... Ge 3:1-7 } Job..... Job 1:6-12
    - } David..... I Ch 21:1 } Christ..... Mt 4:1-11
    - } Judas..... Lu 22:1-6 } Ananias & Sapphira..... Ac 5:1-11
  - > with lies..... Joh 8:44
- > had power of bodily death..... Heb 2:14-15 - Attempts to destroy the gospel..... Mt 13:19; 2Co 4:4
- Opposes God's work and workers..... Zec3:1; ITh2:18;Da 10:10-14
- Perverts the Scriptures..... Mt 4:6 & Ps 91:11-12
- Able to do signs and wonders..... 2Th 2:8-9; Re 13:11-15 - See also Demonology..... Section C5

##### c) LIMITATIONS OF SATAN'S POWER AND AUTHORITY

- Jesus came to destroy Satan's works..... Heb 2:14; IJo3:8
- His temptations of Jesus were ineffective..... Lu 4:13
- Satan has no power over Jesus..... Joh 14:30
- Jesus cast out evil spirits..... Lu 11:20; 13:32
- Disciples empowered to cast out demons..... Mt 10:1; Mk 16:17
- Greater is Jesus in us than Satan in the world..... I Jo 4:4
- He needs God's permission to try Job..... Job 1:9-12
- His demons needed permission to enter the pigs..... Mt 8:30-32 - Stripped of power through the cross..... Col 2:15

##### d) ROLE OF THE SAINTS IN REGARD TO SATAN

- Must not worship angels..... Jdg 13:16-18; Col 2:18; Re

- 19:10; 22:8-9
- > Satan and his angels desire worship..... Mt 4:8-10
- Resist the devil and he will flee..... Jas 4:7; I Pe 5:9
- Be fully armored to resist the devil..... Eph 6:11-17
- Are afflicted by Satan only as God permits..... Job 1:12; 2:4-7; 2Co 12:7-9
- Should be watchful..... 2Co 2:11
- Should overcome Satan..... I Jo 2:13; Re 12:10-11
  - > by the blood of Jesus
  - > by the Word of God
  - > by not loving our lives unto death
- We are promised victory over Satan .....Ro 16:20
- Have power to command evil spirits ..... Lu 10:18-20
- Primary weapon to defeat him: the Word ..... Lu 4:8,10,12

## 5. DEMONS & DEMONOLOGY

We must check our thinking about demons carefully. Much of what the world believes is not from the Bible. I Jo 4:1 tells us that there are many errors taught by false prophets and the spirit of Antichrist.

### a) WHAT ARE DEMONS?

- Called "foul spirits" and "devils" ..... Mt 4:24; 7:22; Mk 9:25
  - > spirits do not have flesh and bone ..... Lu 24:39
- They are NOT spirits of dead people .....Lu 16:27-31
  - > the rich man was unable to come back to earth -
- Most Christians believe they are fallen angels.
  - > fallen angels are now bound by God..... Jude 6; 2Pe 2:4
- The prince of demons is called Beelzebub ..... Mk 3:22
  - > usually understood to be one of Satan's names
- Demons believe there is a God and they are afraid ..... Jas 2:19
- Disciples were afraid of spirits ..... Mt 14:26; Lu 24:37 > this was before the disciples were filled with the Holy Spirit - Demons are able to do miracles in order to deceive..... Re 16:14

### b) HOW DO PEOPLE AND DEMONS RELATE?

- Unbelievers often sacrifice to them ..... ICo 10:20-21; De 32:17
- Demons are seducing spirits that tempt us to sin.....ITi 4:1
  - > demon activity will increase at the end times
- People may teach doctrines of demons .....ITi 4:1-5
  - > forbidding marriage and eating of certain foods
- People may be controlled or possessed by demons ..... see below > demons can also inhabit animals ..... Mt 8:30-32

### c) HOW DO PEOPLE RECEIVE A DEMON?

- People become demonized by worship of idols and works of the flesh.  
I Co 10:20,21; Ga 5:19-21 (Note: Idolatry and Fornication are related, they go together.

Witchcraft is associated with works of the flesh).

- People who make a habit of sinning may receive a demon. Joh 5:14 - False religions can deceive people and open them to demonic power.
- Satan is the deceiver and tempter ..... Re 12:9; ITh 3:5
- Failing to forgive can bring the tormentors (demons)..... Mt 18:34-35
- Lord may send an evil spirit to the disobedient
  - > to trouble king Saul ..... ISa 16:14-16
  - > to speak lies to false prophets ..... IKi 22:23; IJo 4:1

DO NOT COPY

- An evil spirit is able to enter a man who is empty ..... Mt 12:44-45 > the person who is delivered is empty ..... Mt 12:44 > even more spirits can enter if empty ..... Mt 12:45

} this is a strong caution about delivering unbelievers

- Being filled with the HOLY Spirit protects us ..... Ac 2:4; Eph 5:18
- Believers receive the Holy Spirit by asking God ..... Lu 11:13 > one can receive an evil spirit by asking Satan - The following are wrong:
  - > Having dealings with evil spirits ..... 2Ch 33:6; ICo 10:20-21
  - > Worshiping devils ..... Re 9:20 >

Worshiping angels ..... Col 2:18

#### d) OLD TESTAMENT AND DEMONS

- No examples of casting out demons in the Old Testament
- Jesus said the "strong man" must first be bound, then his household can be destroyed ..... Mk 3:27
  - > the strong man (Satan) was not bound until Jesus came. This is the reason Jesus came ..... I Jo 3:8
- Casting out demons-a sign of the Kingdom of God ..... Mt 12:28; Lu 11:20

#### e) WHAT ARE DEMONIZED PEOPLE LIKE?

- May have great strength ..... Mt 8:28; Mk 5:3-4; Lu 8:29; Ac 19:15-16
- Person may mutilate himself ..... Mt 17:15; Mk 5:5
- May be in pain and be injured ..... Mk 9:20
- May foam at the mouth..... Mk 9:20
- May appear as teachers in the Church ..... ITi 4:1-5
- King Saul prophesied when afflicted by evil spirit ..... ISa 18:10
- Demons may speak through the person ..... Mt 8:29-31; Mk 1:24 > demons may speak about Jesus ..... Mk 1:24; Ac 16:16,17 > Jesus did not allow them to speak much ..... Mk 1:34 } We must be careful not to believe the deceiving words of demons.
- May live in unusual places (wilderness, tombs) ..... Lu 8:27
- May go without clothes ..... Lu8:27
- May be afflicted with a bodily disease
  - > dumbness..... Mk9:17 > deafness & dumbness..... Mk9:25
  - > blindness & dumbness..... Mt 12:22 > paralysis or lameness..... Ac 8:7
  - > convulsions.....Mk 1:26; 9:20; Lu 9:39
- Worshipers of idols ..... Le 17:7; DC 32:17; Re 9:20
- May be fortune tellers (divination) ..... Le 20:27; Ac 16:16
- May be involved in witchcraft, magic ..... Isa47:9-13;Ac 19:18-19 - May call on the spirits of the dead ..... 1Sa28:11-14

#### f) HOW SHOULD A BELIEVER RELATE TO DEMONS?

- The Bible does not give us any formula to cast out demons.
- Jesus simply gave authority to his disciples..... Mk 16:17
  - > not the 12 only, but us also ..... Joh 17:20-23

- Jesus simply commanded them to come out..... Mk 1:25; 9:25
    - > attributed to Spirit of God / finger of God..... Mt 12:28; Lu 11:20
  - Jesus did not allow the demons to speak..... Mk 1:34; Lu 4:41
  - Jesus was able to give the authority to disciples ..... Mt 10:1
    - > the disciples needed faith to be successful..... Mt 17:19-20
  - Disciples commanded in the Name of Jesus..... Mk 16:17
  - Prayer and fasting may be necessary ..... Mk 9:29
  - Faith on the part of a person asking ..... Mk 6:5-6; 9:23-24
    - > sometimes no faith is obvious ..... Ac 16:16-19
  - Sweat cloth from Paul expelled demons .....Ac 19:11-12
  - Unbelievers are hurt trying to cast out demons ..... Ac 19:13-16
    - > used the Name of Jesus ..... Ac 19:13
      - > they themselves didn't know Jesus ..... Ac 19:13
  - Casting out a spirit from an unbeliever
    - > may result in greater problems for him ..... Mt 12:44-45
- g) DO DEMONS CAUSE ILLNESSES?
- Demons can cause physical sickness ..... see 5.e above
  - Bible distinguishes between healing and casting out demons  
.....Mt 4:24; 10:8; Mk 1:32; 3:15;  
Lu 9:1-2; 13:32
  - Healings without mention of demons
    - > epileptics & paralytics.... Mt 4:24 > leprosy .....Mt 8:3
    - > centurion's servant..... Mt 8:5-13 > woman and hemorrhage ... Mt 9:20-22
    - >two blind men .....Mt9:27-30 > withered hand ..... Mt 12:9-14

## 6. WORKERS OF EVIL AND MAGIC

### a) DIVINATION (WITCHCRAFT, MAGIC, SPIRITISM)

- Heathen nations practiced magic, divination and spiritism
  - > deeds of the sinful nature (witchcraft) ..... Ga 5:19-21
  - > Balaam receives fee for divination .....Nu 22:7
  - > Philistines had diviners ..... ISa 6:2 > King of Babylon uses divination .....Eze21:21-23
    - > Pharaoh consults his magicians unsuccessfully ..... Ge 41:24
    - > Nebuchadnezzar's magicians unable to tell dream..Da 2:2; 4:7 >
- Bar-Jesus or Elymas, a sorcerer ..... Ac 13:6-12 > girl with a spirit of divination ..... Ac 16:16
  - > magic books burned in Ephesus ..... Ac 19:17-20
  - > magic of the wicked rity of Babylon .....Re 18:23
- Forbidden and to be judged by God
  - > All sorts of magic strictly forbidden by God ..... De 18:9-13
  - > magic and speaking to the dead is forbidden by God..... Isa 8:19-20

- > superstitions from the East and divination judged..Isa 2:6
- > God threatens destruction on witchcraft ..... Mic 5:12
- > all idolatry is evil in God's sight..... 2Ki 17:17
- > God will judge sorcerers ..... Mal 3:5
- > people with magic will not enter New Jerusalem .. Re 21:8
- > God is opposed to those who follow spiritists ..... Le 20:6
- > Saul seeks the spirit of dead Samuel..... ISa 28:11
- > Saul died because he consulted a medium.....ICh 10:13
- > A sorceress was not allowed to live..... Ex 22:18
- > Turning to mediums and spiritists defiles  
a person ..... Le 19:31

#### b) FALSE SIGNS AND WONDERS

- Evil workers can perform miraculous signs ..... Re 16:14; 2Th 2:9-12;  
Mt 24:24; Ex 7:11,22
- Lawless leaders do miracles in Jesus'Name ..... Mt 7:22-23
- Endtime false signs and wonders ..... Mt 24:24
- Second beast does great and miraculous signs ..... Re 13:13
- Sixth bowl of wrath-demons do wonders ..... Re 16:13-14; 19:20

#### c) GOD IS MORE POWERFUL THAN MAGIC

- Pharaoh's magicians unable to change dust to gnats .....Ex8:18-19
- God is greater than any magician ..... Da 2:27-28; Nu 23:23
- God is far more powerful than any witchcraft ..... Isa 19:3; 47:9 - Bar-Jesus or Elymas  
sorcerer defeated ..... Ac 13:6-12

#### d) NOTABLE MAGICIANS IN BIBLE

- Pharaoh's magicians perform miracles .....Ex 7:11
- Magicians make frogs come out of the water..... Ex 8:7
- Medium at Endor whom Saul seeks ..... ISa 28:7-9
- Simon the Sorcerer ..... Ac 8:9-11
- Bar-Jesus or Elymas a sorcerer, false prophet ..... Ac 13:6-8
- Girl who had a spirit of divination.....Ac 16:16

### D.SIN/ MAN

#### TABLE OF CONTENTS - THIS SECTION

##### D1. NATURE OF SIN

##### D2. SIN AND THE LAW

##### D3. SIN, TRIALS AND TEMPTATIONS

##### D4. CREATION OF MAN

##### D5. CONDITION OF UNREDEEMED, FALLEN PEOPLE

##### D6. REDEEMED MAN AND GOD'S KINGDOM

#### 1. NATURE OF SIN

a) DEFINITION: The following subtopics define sin.

Sin is rebellion against God. Because all have sinned (Ro 3:23), all have become God's enemies and are separated from His love..... De 9:7-8; Jos 1:18; Isa 59:2

- The original sin created the breach..... Ge 3:1-24
- Idol-worship is sin ..... Ex 32:31; IKi 12:28-30;  
Isa 31:7; Jer 17:3; 32:35;  
Eze 23:49; Ho 13:2
- Burning incense (to false gods) ..... Jer 44:23
- Witchcraft..... ISa 15:23
- Transgression of the law ..... Le 16:16; Ne 1:6-7; IJo 3:4
- > see Ten Commandments ..... Section II
- Disobedience to God's command ..... Ex 9:27,34; 10:16-17;  
Le 5:17
- > may be done in ignorance ..... Le 4:2,13,22,27; 5:15,17
- > may be done in secret..... Ps 90:8; Pr 28:13
- All unrighteousness ..... IJo 5:17
- Sexual immorality, see Marriage and the Family..... Section G9.
- > homosexuality ..... Ge 9:22;18:20;19:5-9;  
Le 18:22;Ro 1:24-27;  
ICo6:9,10
- > bestiality..... Le 18:23
- > incest ..... Ge 19:33-38; Le 18:6-20s
- > the children of incest, Moab and Ammon, were very ungodly  
..... De 23:3;Jdg 10:6;  
IKi 11:4,7; 2Ki 21:11
- > fornication ..... Mt 5:32; Ac 15:20-29;  
ICo 5:1,11; 10:8;
- > adultery..... Ge 20:7-9; 39:7-10;  
ICo 6:6-10; 7:2; Ga 5:19
- Not doing the good we know ..... Le 5:1; Jas 4:17
- (Sins of omission)
- Thoughts of foolish people ..... Pr 24:9
- Vain or useless talk ..... Pr 10:19
- Despising others, pride ..... Pr 14:21; 21:4
- Unbelief and acts without faith ..... Ro14:23;Heb 12:16;  
Re 2:14,20; 9:21

b) SIN DESCRIBED AS

- Entering the world through Adam..... Ge 3:1-24; Isa 43:27; Ro 5:12
- Of the devil ..... IJo 3:8; Joh 8:44
- Works of darkness ..... Eph5:11-14
- Crouching at the door to attack ..... Ge4:7
- Coming from the heart ..... Mt 15:19-20

- The outcome of lust .....Jas 1:15
  - Coming through ancestors ..... Ex 20:5 Ps 37:28; Pr 14:11
  - A source of human misery ..... Job 15:20 Pr 13:15; Ro 2:9
  - Inexcusable ..... Ro 1:20,2:1; Joh 15:22
- c) WHO HAS SINNED?
- Jesus Christ alone is without sin ..... 2Co 5:21; Heb 4:15;

DO NOT COPY

- Scripture says all are under sin..... Heb7:26;IJo3:5 Ga 3:22; Ps 53:3; Isa 53:6
- All have sinned .....IJo 1:8; IKi 8:46; Ro 3:23
- By heredity we are sinners .....Job 15:14; Job 25:4; Ps 51:5; Ro 5:12-19; ICo 15:21-22
- > Seth in image of sinful Adam.....Ge5:3 - We have sinned
  - > by our deeds (body) ..... Ge 5:17-21
  - > by our attitudes (soul)..... Mt 5:21-22; Jas 2:8-9
- > we are in a sinful state (spirit) .....Joh 16:8-9 - Therefore ALL are sinners .....Ro 3:23

**d) RESULTS OF SIN**

- Separates us from God ..... Ge3:23,24;Isa59:2
- Excludes sinner from heaven ..... ICo6:9;Ga5:19-21; Eph 5:5-7; Re 21:27
- Brings death ..... Ge3:2.3; 3:19; Jas 1:15; Ro 6:23; Eze 18:4
- Brings God's anger .....De 25:16; Pr 6:16-19; IKi 16:2
- Brings God's curse
  - > ground was cursed because of sin ..... Ge 3:17-18
  - > toil and sweat because of it ..... Ge3:16, 17, 19; Job 14:1
  - > pain in childbirth because of sin ..... Ge 3:16
- All creation in bondage .....Ro8:21-22 - Brims calamities
  - > drought..... Jer 5:24; 2Ch 6:26-28
  - > war.....2Ch 6:36-39
  - > sickness ..... Ps 38:3
  - > national problems .....Pr 14:34; Jer 8:14-16; 2Ch 25:4
- Incurs God's punishment
  - > present ..... Isa 13:11; Am 3:2; Jer 5:25; Lu 12:47; Ro 2:8-9
  - > future punishment ..... Mt 18:9; Mk 3:29; Lu 3:17; 2Th 1:9; 2 PC 2:9; Re 14:11; Re 20:15
- God alone can forgive .....Ex 34:7; Da 9:9; Mic 7:18; Mk2:7

**e) GOD'S SOLUTION TO THE PROBLEM OF SIN**

- See Gospel ..... Section F3, F4, F5
- See Salvation ..... Section E2 See Death &
- Endtimes ..... Section H

**2. SIN AND THE LAW**

a) LIMITED TIME-PERIOD OF THE LAW

- Exists until its requirements are fulfilled ..... Mt 5:18
- Christ Jesus fulfilled the Law..... Mt 5:17-18; Lu 24:44
  - > for those who walk after the Spirit of God .....Ro 8:3-5
- Love fulfills the law ..... Ro 13:8-10; Ga5:14;Jas 2:8 -
  - Bearing one another's burdens fulfills the law.....Ga 6:2

b) SALVATION BY PROMISE (GRACE & FAITH)

- BEFORE the Law-through Abraham .....Ro 4:13,16; Ga 3:17-21
  - > Abraham counted as having obeyed the law.....Ge 26:5
- AFTER the Law-through Jesus.....Job 1:17; Ro 8:2; Ga 2:16
  - > the law was in effect until John the Baptist .....Lu 16:16 > after  
John the Baptist the gospel is preached ..... Lu 16:16

c) CONTENT OF THE LAW

- Old Covenant Content
  - > Ten Commandments ..... Ex 20:3-17; De 5:7-21
  - > Levitical Laws .....Ex; Le; De
- New Covenant Understanding of the Law
  - > greatest commandment is to love God fully ..... Mt 22:36-40; Lu 10:26-27
  - > next greatest is to love others as yourself..... Mt 22:39; Lu 10:27
  - > important matters - judgment, mercy, faith..... Mt 23:23
  - > Jesus is above the law..... Job 8:5-11; Mt 12:8

d) PURPOSE OF THE LAW

- Made for sinners
  - > made for the ungodly, not the redeemed..... ITi 1:9
  - > reveals God's wrath against the ungodly ..... Ro 4:15
  - > law was added because of transgressions ..... Ga 3:19
- Law is pictured as a prison..... Ga 3:23 > within a  
larger prison-the Prison of Sin ..... Ga 3:22
  - > when faith comes we are freed from the Law .....Ga 3:23
  - > with God's Spirit we are freed from Sin's  
bondage..... Ga 5:13-18
- Is a shadow of the good things to come .....Heb 10:1
- Brings a consciousness of sin .....Ro 3:20; 7:7 - Put in charge  
to lead us to Christ ..... Ga 3:23-29

e) RESULTS OF THE LAW

- Law gives sin its power ICo 15:56
  - > without law, sin isn't counted against us .....Ro 5:13
- People are unable to keep the Law
  - > requires perfect obedience ..... De 27:26; Ga 3:10-11;  
Jas2:10
  - > no one can perfectly obey the law ..... Ro 3:10

- > Israel couldn't keep the law ..... Isa 42:24; Jer 9:13; Da 9:11 >
- all people need to be justified by God's grace ..... Ro 3:19-24
- Law unable to save because of man's sinfulness ..... Ro 8:3
- > the law made nothing perfect ..... Heb 7:19; Ga 2:16
- > through the law we die to the law, to live  
for God ..... Ga 2:19-21

**f) CHRIST JESUS IS THE FULFILLMENT OF THE LAW**

- The law was in effect until John the Baptist ..... Lu 16:16
  - > after John the gospel is preached instead ..... Lu 16:16
- Church not obliged to keep the law of Moses ..... Ac 15:5-21; Ro 6:14
  - > but this is not permission to sin ..... Ro 6:15
  - > justified by faith without the law ..... Ro 3:28
- Christ fulfilled the requirements of the law ..... Mt 5:17
- Christ abolished the law by His death ..... Eph 2:15-17; Ro 10:3-4 - Christ freed us from the curse of the law ..... Ga 3:13

**g) A NEW COVENANT WITH GOD**

- The New Covenant (Grace and Faith) puts the REQUIREMENTS of the Law into our hearts ..... Heb 8:10-13; 10:16-17 - See the Gospel ..... Section F3

**3. SIN, TRIALS AND TEMPTATIONS**

**a) TRIALS**

These are circumstances that we are meant to endure. They are not caused by our sinfulness; rather they are often caused by our standing for righteousness in a sinful world.

- Job withstands the attack of Satan ..... Book of Job
- O.T. believers had cruel trials ..... Heb 11:36-40
  - > many modern believers suffer cruel trials
- Trials come to refine us ..... Jas 1:2-5; IPe 1:6-7
- We are partakers with Jesus'sufferings ..... IPe 4:12-16 - God is able to rescue the righteous ..... 2Pe 2:7-9

**b) TEMPTATIONS**

Temptations are not sin, but Satan uses them to cause us to sin. We must resist the temptations to sin.

- God does not tempt us to sin ..... Jas 1:13-15
- God provides a way out of temptations ..... ICo 10:13; 2Pe 2:9 - Satan is the chief tempter
  - > Satan tempts Eve in Eden ..... Ge 3:1-7
  - > Satan tempts King David ..... ICh 21:1-30
  - > Satan tempts us ..... 2Co 2:10-11; 11:3; ITh 3:5
- World provides temptations ..... IJo 2:15-17; Mt 13:22; Lu 8:13

- > desire for riches is a terrible snare ..... ITi 6:9-11 > Achan takes the riches of Babylon ..... Jos 7:1-26
  - > Lot desires the land around Sodom ..... Ge 13:10-13 > King Saul keeps the best of the Amalekite cattle .. ISa 15:20-26
    - > Elisha's servant, Gehazi, takes gold and clothes .... 2Ki 5:20-27

DO NOT COPY

- Our own evil desires entice us ..... Jas 1:14
  - > the desires give birth to sin..... Jas 1:15
  - > full-grown sin gives birth to death ..... Jas 1:15
  - > Esau gives up his godly birthright for food ..... Ge 25:29-33
  - > King Solomon's desire for women leads him astray ..... IKi 11:1-4
- Jesus was tempted in all points like we are ..... Heb 4:15
- Jesus was tempted by the devil..... Mt 4:1; Mk 1:13; Lu 4:2
  - > bodily-satisfy desires of the body ..... Mt 4:2-4
  - > soul - show His special relation with the Father .... Mt 4:5-7
  - > spirit - worship Satan in order to receive power .... Mt 4:8-10
- We ought to pray to be kept from temptation ..... Mt 6:13; Lu 11:4
- Be careful not to be tempted by sins of those we help ..... Ga6:1
- We ought to resist temptations ..... Pr 1:10; Ro 6:13; Eph 6:13
  - > Elisha does not take money for healing Naaman...2Ki 5:16
  - > Peter does not take money for spiritual gift ..... Ac 8:20
  - > Job resists his wife's evil counsel ..... Job 2:9-10
  - > Rechabites refuse wine ..... Jer 35:5-6
  - > Daniel and his friends refuse the king's food ..... Da 1:8

#### 4. CREATION OF MAN

##### a) CREATION OF MAN

- By God the Father ..... Ge 1:27; Isa 45:11-12
- By Jesus Christ..... Job 1:1-5; Col 1:13-16
- By Holy Spirit..... Job 33:4
- On the sixth day of creation ..... Ge 1:26-27
- On the earth, not elsewhere ..... De 4:32; Ps 104:30; Isa 45:12
- Body from the dust ..... Ge 2:7; Job 33:6
- Man's spirit by God's breath ..... Ge2:7; Ec 12:7
- Male & female He created them ..... Ge 1:27; 5:1-2
  - > Woman is in no way inferior to man; the term "helper" used in Ge 2:20 is the term used of God in Ps 33:20
- It was very good ..... Ge 1:31; Ps 139:14 - Created with a free will..... Ge 2:16,17; Jos 24:15

##### b) MAN IS A COMPOUND BEING-SPIRITUAL AND MATERIAL

- Man has an earth-like body ..... Ge2:7;Ec 12:7
- Man has a spiritual part. God's breath of life ..... Ge2:7;Ec 12:7
  - > called "soul" ..... Mt 10:28
  - > called "spirit" ..... Ac 7:59
  - > called "spirit" and "soul" and "body" ..... I Th 5:23
- The immortal (spiritual) part lives in the body ..... 2Co 5:63
- Death of the body happens when spirit departs ..... Jas 2:26

- > when the spirit returned the body became alive..... Lu 8:55
- > after physical death, the spirit remains alive..... Mt 22:32
- Soul and Spirit are hard to separate
  - > used as if almost the same ..... I Sa 1:15; Job 7:11; Isa 26:9
- > Word of God is able to separate between them..... Heb 4:12
- Salvation is the saving of our SOUL ..... 1Pe 1:8-9; Jas 1:21; Heb 10:39
  - > otherwise our soul is destroyed..... Mt 10:28; Ac 3:22- 23
  - > our SPIRIT goes back to God who made it ..... Ec 12:7
- We can see our body. Our soul and spirit are not visible. Our spirit is the life from God. Our soul is our personality and character - who we are and who we are becoming. c)
- MAN WAS CREATED IN THE LIKENESS OF GOD**
- Man was made in image (likeness) of God ..... Ge 1:26-27;5:1-2
  - > so murder and harsh speaking are not allowed..... Ge 9:6; Jas 3:9-10
- Male & Female are in image (likeness) of God.....Ge 1:27;5:2
- Likeness is not physical-God is a Spirit ..... Joh 4:24
- Likeness is righteousness, holiness and truth..... Eph 4:21-24
- Likeness is in ethical knowledge ..... Col3:10 - Likeness is in authority to rule (on earth) ..... Ge 1:26
- d) **MAN'S LOST AND RENEWED LIKENESS OF GOD**
- After the fall (rebellion) of man
  - > children are born in the image of their sinful parents..... Ge 5:3 -
- Jesus' first coming was
  - > in the likeness of man ..... Ro 8:3; Php 2:7- 8
  - > in the perfect likeness of God ..... 2Co 4:4; Col 1:15; Heb 1:3-4 - People after being redeemed by Jesus
    - > we are being renewed into image of Jesus..... Col 3:10
    - > we are predestined to be in image of Jesus ..... Ro 8:29 -
- At the resurrection
  - >believers will have his likeness ..... Ps 17:15;1Co 15:49 > wicked will have a despised likeness..... Ps 73:20
- e) **ALL RACES OF MAN HAVE THE SAME ORIGIN**
- From one man (blood) He made all men ..... Ac 17:26-29
- One woman is the original mother of us all .....Ge3:20 - After the flood, all people come from Noah..... Ge 9:18-19
- f) **AUTHORITY ON THE EARTH**
- Superior to all earthly creation..... Mt 6:26; 12:12
  - > rule all creatures and creation ..... Ge 1:28; Ps 8:1-9
  - > plants as food ..... Ge 1:29
  - > animals as food ..... Ge 9:1-3
- Redeemed man will judge the world and angels ..... I Co 6:2-3

## **5. CONDITION OF UNREDEEMED, FALLEN PEOPLE**

- a) REBELLION OF MAN AGAINST GOD .....see also Sin (Section D1)
  - The disobedience, fall and curse on man ..... Ge 3:1-24
  - Sin and death entered through Adam ..... Ro 5:12; ICo 15:21-22
  - All guilty ..... Ro3:23; Ge6:5; 1 Ki 8:46; Ps 14:2-3; Isa 53:6; 64:5-7
  - All need to be saved.....1Ti 2:4; Ro 3:23; Ga 3:22; 1Jo 1:8; 5:19
  
- b) MAN IS UNDER THE WRATH OF GOD
  - Sec Sin and the Law..... Section D2
    - > cursed is the man who docs not obey God's law.... De 27:26
    - > requirements of the law are known to all..... Ro 2:13-15 >
    - no person can keep the requirements of the law..... Ro 3:20; Ga 2:21 -
  - Wrath of God
    - > towards unbelievers ..... Job 3:36> against ungodliness..... Ro 1:18
    - > at judgment time..... Ro2:5 > those marked 666..... Re 14:9-11
    - > against the disobedient..... Eph 5:6; Col 3:6
  - The saved will not face God's wrath ..... 1 Th5:9
  
- c) WORK AND MAN
  - Work brings wealth and place of honor .....Pr 10:4; 14:23; 22:29
    - > laziness leads to poverty ..... Pr 10:4; 14:23
    - > diligence in work is highly commended ..... Pr 13:4; 2Ti 2:6 -
  - Before the Fall
    - > Adam was to rule over creation ..... Ge 1:28 > Adam kept the Garden of Eden ..... Ge 2:15 - After the Fall
      - > work became more difficult..... Ge 3:19; 5:29
      - > God & Jesus work and finish their work ..... Job 5:17; 17:4 - After salvation
        - > exhortations to physical work ..... I Th 4:11; 2Th 3:10-12
        - > work of ministry..... Eph 4:12; ITi 3:1
        - > not hearers but workers are blessed ..... Jas 1:25
        - > rewarded according to our works ..... I Pe 1:17; Re 22:12; I Co 3:13-15
  - Work is expected, rest is commanded
    - > before the law ..... Ge2:2-3;
    - > after the law ..... Ex 20:9-11
  
- d) PHYSICAL, SOCIAL CONDITION OF UNREDEEMED MAN (as seen in Genesis) - Shame and guilt..... Ge 3:7 -Wicked and violent..... Ge 6:5,11
  - Fear of God..... Ge 3:8,10                      -God judges sin..... Ge 6:5-7
  - Broken relations..... Ge 3:12                      -Mercy and grace..... Ge 6:8-9
  - Savior promised..... Ge 3:15                      - Meat as food..... Ge 9:3
  - Pain and work..... Ge 3:16-19                      - Division of nations.....Ge 11:1-9

- Blood sacrifice..... Ge 3:21; 4:4-5
- Lost blessing..... Ge 3:23-24
- Anger and Murder... Ge 4:6-8; 23-24
- Separated from God. Ge 4:14
- Death from old age.. Ge 5:5
- Demonic activity.....Ge 6:1-4
- Promise of grace..... Ge 12:1-3
- Famine and Disease..... Ge 12:10,17
- War..... Ge 14:1-4
- Power of prayer..... Ge 18:16-33
- Sexual immorality.....Ge 19:4-5,33 -
- God destroys..... Ge 19:24-29

**e) MAN IS OF GREAT VALUE TO GOD EVEN THOUGH FALLEN**

- More valuable than birds or sheep ..... Mt 6:26; 12:12; Lu 12:24
- Best seen by the redemption price ..... Job 3:16; I Pe 1:18-19
- Redeemed in order to share God's glory ..... Heb 2:10; 2Th 1:11,12

**6. REDEEMED MAN AND GOD'S KINGDOM**

**a) ALL RACES OF MAN ARE INCLUDED IN GOD'S KINGDOM**

- He is God of all people ..... Nu 16:22; 27:16
- Non-Israelites included by the blood of Jesus ..... Eph 2:11-22
- God's Spirit to be poured out on all flesh ..... Joe 2:28; Ac 2:17
- Heaven includes people from every nation ..... Re 5:9
- People from every nation accepted by God ..... Ac 10:34-35
  - > Rahab from Jericho ..... Jos 2:1; 6:17; Heb 11:31; Jas 2:25
  - > Ruth from Moab ..... Book of Ruth
  - > Samaritan woman... Job 4:7-42 > Naaman from Aram..... 2Ki 5:15-19
  - > Syrophenidan woman..... Mk 7:24-30 > Roman Centurion.... Mt 8:5-13 >
- Peter's vision..... Ac 10:9-16 > Cornelius, a Roman..... Ac 10:17-48

**b) ALL CATEGORIES OF PEOPLE ARE INCLUDED IN GOD'S KINGDOM**

- In Christ Jesus there is no difference between Jew nor Greek, slave nor free, male nor female ..... Ga 3:28 - The poor & the rich ..... Jas2:4-5;
- The old ..... Le 19:32
- Children ..... Mt 18:3; 19:14; Ac 2:39 - Married or unmarried ..... I Co 7:

**c) CONDITIONS FOR ENTRANCE INTO THE KINGDOM OF GOD**

- Humility/childlikeness ..... Mt 18:3
- spiritual desire .....Mt 5:6
- being born again ..... Joh 3:3-5
- Full commitment to Christ ..... Lu 9:62
- Faith and love..... Jas 2:5
- Enduring tribulations ..... Ac 14:22; 2Th 1:5

**d) NATURE OF THE KINGDOM**

- eternal..... Da 2:44;Lu 1:33
- expansive..... Mt 13:31-32
- powerful..... Mk 9:1;2Co 10:4
- present ..... Mt 12:28; Lu 17:21; 12:32
- glorious ..... I Th 2:12
- unshakable ..... Heb 12:28
- not of this world ..... Joh 18:36
- diversified ..... Re 5:9,10; Da 7:14
- has authority..... Mt 16:19
- hidden/invisible ..... Mt 13:33; Col 1:15,16
- tends to constant growth..... Isa 9:6,7; Mt 13:33
- includes the angelic hosts ..... Heb 12:22; Re 5:11
- characterized by righteousness, peace and joy ..... Ro 14:17 - is the place where God's will is done ..... Mt 6:10

**e) THE KINGDOM IN THE OLD TESTAMENT**

- Abraham's seed to become a great nation ..... Ge 12:2
- Abraham's name changed to father of many nations ..... Ge 17:4,5
- Israel chosen to be a kingdom ..... Ex 19:5,6
- Gideon knew the kingdom ..... Jdg 8:23
- Israel rejected the kingdom ..... I Sa 8:7
- Esther came to the kingdom ..... Es 4:14
- David's seed promised to inherit the kingdom ..... 2 Sa 7:13
- Isaiah saw the King exalted over His kingdom ..... Isa 6:2-6 - Daniel prophesied about the future kingdom ..... Da 2:44;7:14

**f) OTHER NAMES FOR THE KINGDOM OF GOD**

- kingdom of heaven ..... Mt 13:11
- kingdom of Christ..... Lu 22:30; 2Pe 1:11; Eph 5:5
- kingdom of their father ..... Mt 13:43; 26:29
- kingdom of light ..... I Pe 2:9; Col 1:13
- the (holy) city ..... Ps48; Heb 11:16
- (new) Jerusalem ..... Heb 12:22; Mic 4:2; Re 21:2

**g) OTHER "KINGDOMS", i.e. NAMES FOR SATAN'S KINGDOM**

- Satan's kingdom ..... Mt 12:26
- kingdoms of this world ..... Mt 4:8;Re 11:15; Joh 14:30
- kingdom of darkness ..... Col 1:13; Re 16:10
- Babylon ..... Da 4:29;Re 18:2
- the sinful kingdom ..... Am 9:8 - kingdom of the nations ..... Hag 2:22

**h) CHRIST AND THE KINGDOM OF GOD**

- Jesus reigns supreme as King of the kingdom ..... I Ti 6:15,16
- Jesus' coming inaugurated the kingdom ..... Mt 4:17
- Jesus preached most often about the kingdom ..... Mt 13

- Authority over demons demonstrated the kingdom ..... Mt 12:28
- Jesus' presence constitutes the kingdom ..... Lu 17:21 - Jesus' return represents the kingdom's full arrival ..... Re 11:15

i) PEOPLE OF THE KINGDOM

- Servants ..... Mt 13:27; 25:14-46; Re 7:15
- Sojourners and exiles ..... Heb 11:13; I Pe 2:11
- children ..... Mt 18:1-4
- spiritual priests ..... Ex 19:6; I Pe 2:9; Re 5:10

DO NOT COPY

**j) PRINCIPLES OF THE KINGDOM**

Note: Many principles of the kingdom are expressed in parables, which is a way of expressing the radical difference between them and the principles under which this world operates. Jesus often spoke in parables as a means of expressing these truths which are so difficult to express in human terms. They are foolishness to those who are perishing (I Co 1:18) and are spiritually discerned (I Co 2:9-13).

- it is more blessed to give than receive ..... Ac20:35
- the way to live is to die ..... Joh 12:24, 25; Mt 10:39
- the way to glory is through suffering .....Ro 8:17; 1 Pe 5:10
- strength is found through weakness .....Heb 11:34; 2Co 12:9
- the meek are exalted ..... I Pe 5:5,6; Mt 5:5
- the persecuted are the ones who are blessed .....Mt 5:11,12
- the inferior are honored, chosen ..... Isa 53:3; I Co 12:23
- the poor are really rich ..... Lu 6:20; 2 Co 6:10;8:9
- the slaves are really free ..... Ro 6:18; Phm 1:1
- the fools are becoming wise ..... I Co 1:26; 3:18
- the most dependent are the most mature ..... Joh 21:18
- God uses the worthless and useless ..... Heb 11:38; Ex 4:10; Jdg 6:15

**E. SALVATION (REDEMPTION)**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS - THIS SECTION**

**E1. THE BLOOD OF JESUS (SUFFICIENT FOR TOTAL REDEMPTION)**

**E2. MEANS OF SALVATION**

**E3. CALLING- FOREKNOWLEDGE -PREDESTINATION**

**E4. REPENTANCE**

**E5. SAVING FAITH**

**E6. REGENERATION (BORN OF GOD) E7.**

**JUSTIFICATION**

**E8. ADOPTION**

**E9. BAPTISM IN HOLY SPIRIT**

**E10. PERSEVERANCE**

**E11. SANCTIFICATION - HOLINESS**

**E12. GLORIFICATION**

**1. THE BLOOD OF JESUS (SUFFICIENT FOR TOTAL REDEMPTION)**

**a) BLOOD OF JESUS IS DESCRIBED AS**

- Blood of Jesus Christ..... I Jo 1:7      - Innocent ..... Mt 27:4
- Blood of His cross..... Col 1:20      - Precious ..... IPe 1:19 - Blood of the Lord..... I Co 11:27      -Blood of the Lamb ... Re 7:14;12:11

**b) WITHOUT THE SHEDDING OF BLOOD THERE IS NO FORGIVENESS**

..... Heb 9:22

- The Blood makes Atonement (Friendship with God) ... Le 17:11 c) **WHAT THE BLOOD OF JESUS HAS ACCOMPLISHED**

- The Church was bought by His blood..... Ac 20:28
  - > we have been purchased for God ..... Re 5:9
- New covenant in His blood ..... Mt 26:28; Mk 14:24; Lu 22:20; 1Co 11:25
  - > eternal covenant ..... Heb 13:20
- Redemption through the blood ..... Eph 1:7; Col 1:14
  - > redeemed from our former way of life ..... IPe 1:18-19
- Justified (reconciled) by His blood..... Ro 5:9
- cleanses our consciences .....Heb 9:14
- We are brought close to God .....Eph 2:13 > peace with God through his blood ..... Col 1:20
- Forgiveness of sins .....Mt 26:28
  - > purifies us from all sin .....1Jo 1:7
- We are holy through his blood ..... Heb 13:12 - Overcome Satan by the Lamb's blood ..... Re 12:11

**d) OLD TESTAMENT TYPES OF THE BLOOD OF JESUS**

- Passoverlamb ..... Ex 12:3-30; 1Co 5:7
  - > chosen beforehand ..... Ex 12:3; 1Pe 2:4
  - > taken out of the flock ..... Ex 12:5; Heb 2:14,17
  - > male .....Ex 12:5;Isa 9:6
  - > without defect .....Ex 12:5; 1Pe 1:19
  - > slaughtered in evening .....Ex 12:6; Mk 15:33-37 >
- blood applied on doorframes.....Ex 12:7,22; Heb 9:13-14; 1Pe 1:2
  - > not applied to the threshold .....Ex 12:7; Heb 10:29
  - > meat roasted with bitter herbs ..... Ex 12:8; Ro 8:17
  - > bread without yeast ..... Ex 12:8; 1Co 5:7-8
  - > eaten in haste (ready to leave) ..... Ex 12:11
  - > blood-marked arc not judged ..... Ex 12:12-13; Ro 5:9
  - > celebrates leaving Egypt ..... Ex 12:17;Mt 2:15;Heb 8:7-13
  - > aliens and Israelites to eat ..... Ex 12:19; Ro 9:23-24
  - > to remain inside until morning ..... Ex 12:22; Ac 13:43; 14:22; Ro 11:22
- The Day of Atonement ..... Le 16:1-34; 23:26-32; Heb 9:1-10:39
  - > only High Priest allowed to enter ..... Le 16:2; Heb 10:19-22
- > not allowed to enter at will..... Le 16:2; Heb 10:19-22 >
- offering for himself & household ..... Le 16:6,11; Heb 9:7-10
  - > sprinkling blood of bull and goat..... Le 16:14-19; Heb 9:11-14
  - > scapegoat sent to desert ..... Le 16:8-10,20-22 Joh 1:29

- > with sin offering for the people ..... Le 16:15; 1Co 3:16
- > atonement for tabernacle parts ..... Le 16:16; 1Co 6:19,20
- > bull & goat burned outside the camp ..... Le 16:27; Heb 13:11-13
- > to be done once a year ..... Le 16:34; Heb 9:7-10,25-28
- > starts Year of Jubilee - debts forgiven ..... Le 25:8-9

## 2. MEANS OF SALVATION

### a) FAITH VERSUS WORKS

#### - Source of Salvation

- > of God alone ..... Ps 3:8; 37:39; Isa 45:21-22;  
Jer 3:23
  - > by Jesus Christ alone..... Isa 45:21-22; Ac 4:12
  - > is of God's Grace..... Eph 2:5,8; 2Ti 1:9; Tit 2:11
  - > is through Faith in Christ ..... Mk 16:16; Ac 16:31;  
Ro 10:9; 1Pe 1:5
  - > is NOT by Works or Sacraments..... Ro 11:6; Eph 2:9; 2Ti 1:9;  
Tit 3:5
  - > is NOT by the law but FAITH..... Ro 3:21-31; Ga 2:16 - Good Works
  - > God has prepared them for us..... Eph 2:10
  - > After being saved by Faith ..... Eph 2:8-10; 1Th 1:3
  - > Good Works demonstrate our Faith..... Jas 2:14-20; Re 2:13
- > Note: We obey God because we love Him. Water Baptism and Lord's Supper are part of His desire for us but we do not get saved by them.

### b) IMPORTANCE OF GOD'S GRACE IN ALL ASPECTS OF SALVATION

- Our calling or election by GRACE .....Ro 11:5; Ga 1:15 - We believed through GRACE ..... Ac 18:27
- The Gospel is about God's GRACE ..... Ac 20:24
- Justified by God's GRACE ..... Tit 3:7
- Eternal Life through GRACE ..... Eph 1:7
- Forgiveness of Sins – GRACE ..... Eph 1:7
- Comfort & Hope through GRACE..... 2Th 2:16
- Strength in GRACE ..... 2Ti 2:1
- GRACE to Preach..... Eph 3:8
- GRACE to Serve God .....Heb 12:28
- Growth in GRACE ..... 2Pe 3:18 - We are what we are, by GRACE ..... 1 Co 15:10

**GRACE:**  
*The undeserved gift of God's love and favor towards people, because of the work of Jesus.*

### c) OUR PART IN SALVATION, WITH GOD'S HELP

- Repentance & Baptism..... Ac 2:38 - Confession & Faith ..... Ro 10:9-10 - Acting on God's Word..... Jas 1:21-25 - Endurance..... Mt 10:22

TEACHING PASSAGE-Ro 3:21-26 ..... see also:

- Produces righteousness ..... Ro 3:21
- Apart from the law..... Ro 3:21..... Ro 3:28

- From God..... Ro 3:21-22 ..... Php 3:9 - Through faith in Jesus Christ ..... Ro 3:22..... Ac 4:12
- To all who believe ..... Ro 3:23.....Ac 2:21
- Needed by all ..... Ro 3:23 ..... 2Pe 3:9
- Freely by His grace ..... Ro3:24 ..... Eph 2:8

DO NOT COPY

- Through faith in His blood..... Ro 3:25-26 ..... Heb 9:14; 1Jo 1:7
- e) SALVATION DELIVERS US FROM THE FOLLOWING:
- Sin ..... Mt 1:21 & 1Jo 3:5 - Uncleaness ..... Eze 36:29 - Self.....
  - Ro 6: -God's Wrath.....Ro 5:9; 1Th 1:10
  - Law ..... Ro 6:14 - Eternal Death .....Joh 3:16-17
  - This present Evil World ..... Ga 1:4
  - Power of the Devil..... Col 1:13; 2:15; Heb 2:14-15
- f) AFFECTS ALL ASPECTS OF THE BELIEVER
- Body - healing - by His stripes ..... 1Pe 2:24
    - > future glorified body ..... 1Co 15:44; Php 3:21;
    - Ro 8:23
  - Soul - salvation of the soul ..... 1Pe 1:9
    - > hope and cleansing ..... Heb 6:18,19; Jas 1:21
  - Spirit - made perfect ..... Heb 12:23
    - > communication with God's Spirit..... Ro 8:16

### **3. CALLING-FOREKNOWLEDGE-PREDESTINATION**

#### a) DEFINITIONS

- Call: Because sin has spiritually blinded man and has made him unable to believe, God must act first in order to enable us to turn to Him.
- Foreknowledge - Predestination: Because God knows all things and has all power, we acknowledge that those who get saved do so by His almighty will and purposes.

#### b) PREACHING

- People are called by the preaching of the gospel .....Ro 10:14-15
  - > Jesus preached ..... Mt 4:17; Mk 1:38-39;
  - Lu 4:18-19; 4:43-44
  - > disciples preached ..... Mt 10:7; Mk 3:14; 16:15;
  - Lu 9:2
  - > we should preach ..... 2Co 5:18-20 -
- What they preached
  - > the gospel.....Ro 1:15; 2Co 2:12; Mk 16:15;
  - Lu 4:18; Section F3
  - > deliverance ..... Lu 4:18
  - > kingdom of God ..... Lu 4:43; 9:2,60
  - > Jesus Christ ..... Ac 5:42; 1Co 1:23; Ga 1:16
  - > word of faith ..... Ro 10:8
  - > the word..... 2Ti 4:2
- To whom they preached
  - > to the poor.....Mt 11:5
  - > in all the world ..... Mt 24:14
  - > everywhere ..... Mk 16:20;Ac 8:4
  - > in villages ..... Ac 8:25
  - ..... Ac 8:40
  - > to every creature .....Col 1:23

#### c) GOD'S FOREKNOWLEDGE AND CHOOSING

- God knows the end from the beginning .....Isa 46:10
  - God chose Israel ..... De 4:37 7:6
  - Jesus chose His disciples ..... Joh 15:16; Ac 1:2
- Jesus foreknew Judas would betray Him ..... Joh 6:70; 13:11
- Believers are chosen by God's foreknowledge ..... 1Pe 1:2
- Believers are a chosen people ..... 1Pe 2:9-10
- We were chosen in Christ before creation ..... Eph 1:4; Ro 8:18-35
- Salvation is a GIFT from God ..... Ro 5:15-17 - God's sovereign choosing is plainly taught.....Ro 9:1-33

d) PROCESS OF THE CALL AND THE CHOOSING

- Ro 8:28-39
  - > those who are called of God, LOVE God..... Ro 8:28
  - > the predestined ALLOW THEMSELVES to be changed by God .....Ro 8:29
  - > the called go through a PROCESS called SALVATION ..... Ro 8:30
  - > to the end that they might be GLORIFIED with Him .....Ro 8:30
  - > the all-powerful God is working for the Called ..... Ro 8:31-39
    - }1 He is fighting for us.....Ro 8:31
    - }2 He is supplying all our needs ..... Ro8:32
    - }3 He is vindicating us ..... Ro 8:33
    - }4 He is ever interceding for us ..... Ro 8:34

e) CAUTIONS!! Some will say that if God knows who will be saved, then we don't have to do anything. Not so! God uses us to achieve

- His purposes..... 2Pe 3:9
- Church must preach the gospel ..... 1Co 1:21; 2Co 5:18-20
  - > we are His ambassadors ..... 2Co 5:20; Eph 6:20
  - > God is making His appeal through us ..... 2Co 5:20
- The gospel is also preached to those who reject it > as a testimony to all nations, then the end will come ..... Mt 24:14
  - > some will refuse to love the truth ..... 2Th 2:10
- We are commanded to preach to the people ..... Ac 10:42
- Called to preach the gospel ..... Ac 16:10 - People must be sent to preach .....Ro 10:15
- Paul felt compelled to preach the gospel ..... 1Co 9:16
- Paul tries all means so as to possibly save some ..... 1Co 9:19-23
- We need to make our own calling and election sure ..... 2Pe 1:10
- It is possible to resist God's grace ..... 2Co 6:1-2

**4. REPENTANCE**

a) REPENTANCE INVOLVES:

- Knowing that we are sinners in the sight of God ..... Ps 51:3-4
- A deep feeling of remorse for our sins ..... 2Co 7:10-11; Lu 18:13;  
Ps 38:18
- An active turning away from sin to God ..... 1Th 1:9; Ac 26:18
- God responds by forgiving our sins ..... Ac 2:38,5:31,8:22; 1Jo 1:9
- We continue by setting our hearts and minds to follow God
  - > which becomes SAVING FAITH ..... see Section E5
- Great rejoicing in heaven ..... Lu 15:7,10
- b) REPENTANCE IS COMMANDED BY GOD TO ALL.. Eze 18:30-32; Ac 17:30
- Jesus came to call sinners to repentance..... Mt 9:13; Mk 2:17; Lu 5:32
- c) REPENTANCE PREACHED BY
- O.T. prophets ..... Joe 2:12; Ho 14:2;  
Da 4:27; Isa 58
- John the Baptist ..... Mt 3:2
- Jesus..... Mt 4:17;Lu 13:3      - Jesus' followers ..... Lu 24:46-47 - Peter..... Ac 2:38;3:19      -Paul ..... Ac 17:30-31
- d) REPENTANCE INVOLVES A CHANGE OF
- Our mind ..... Mt 21:28-29
- Our hearts .....2Co 7:9-10; Isa 57:15 - Our will  
..... Lu 15:18-20
- e) REPENTANCE IS ASSOCIATED WITH
- Conviction of sin.....Ac 2:37-38; 19:16-19
- Water Baptism .....Ac 2:38
- Holy Spirit.....Ac 2:38
- Turning to God .....Ac 2:38; 3:19
- Confession of sin.....Pr 28:13; 1Jo 1:9; Mt 3:6;  
Ps 38:18; Da 9:20
- Forgiveness of sin ..... Lu 24:46-47; Ac 2:38
- Faith (believing) .....Mt 21:32; Mk 1:15; Ac 20:21 -  
Prayer ..... 1Ki 8:33; Ac 8:22
- Turning from sin ..... 2Ch 6:26
- Turning from idolatry .....Eze 14:6; 1Th 1:9
- Changed lifestyle ..... Mt 3:2-8
- Fear of judgment..... Lu 23:40; Mt 3:7
- f) EXAMPLES OF TRUE REPENTANCE
- King David (Bathsheba) ..... 2Sa 12:13; Ps 51 - King David  
(Census) .....2Sa 24:10-14
  - > Note: There were natural consequences despite God's forgiveness.
- Prodigal son ..... Lu 15:18,21
- Tax collector ..... Lu 18:13
- Zacchaeus.....Lu 19:2-10 - Thief on the cross  
..... Lu 23:39-43

g) EVIDENCE OF TRUE REPENTANCE

- Good works follow true repentance .....Mt 3:8,5:16; Ac 26:20;

Eph 2:10; 1Ti 2:10,6:18; 2Ti 3:17; Tit 2:7,14; Heb 10:24; 1Pe 2:12

- We forgive our enemies ..... Mt 6:12-15; 18:21-35; Mk 11:25-26;

Lu 6:37; 11:4; 17:3,4; 23:34; Ac 7:60; Eph 4:32

DO NOT COPY

We do not go or look back .....Lu 9:62 - Restitution  
..... Lu 19:2-10

**h) EXAMPLES OF FALSE OR INEFFECTIVE REPENTANCE**

- Pharaoh in Egypt (immediate fear only) ..... Ex 9:27,35; 10:16,20
- King Saul (desired honor of people)..... 1Sa 15:24-31
- Judas Iscariot (regret is not enough) ..... Mt 27:3-5
- Simon the Sorcerer (fear only) ..... Ac 8:18-24 - Esau (unable to change his mind) ..... Heb 12:17

**5. SAVING FAITH**

**a) DEFINITION OF SAVING FAITH**

We believe that there is only one God and that He is as He reveals Himself in the Scriptures, the Bible. We believe that Jesus Christ is truly God and truly man and that He died for our sins and was raised for our justification. We demonstrate our faith to God by remaining faithful and obedient (by His help through the Holy Spirit) even if circumstances are difficult.

- See also The Gospel ..... Section F4

There is a "gift of faith" which comes by the Holy Spirit to equip believers to do various works of ministry.

For this kind of faith, see ..... Section F11

**b) SAVING FAITH INVOLVES:**

- Our Mind: knowledge of the truth of Christ Jesus ..... Ps 9:10; Ro 10:17
- Our Hearts: agreeing that these things are true ..... Mk 12:32; Joh 1:12 - Our Wills: acting upon the truth ..... 1Jo 2:3-6

**c) WHAT SAVING FAITH IS NOT:**

Biblical, saving Faith does NOT involve charms, fetishes, special prayers, mantras, good works or religious activities or sacraments.

- See False Gospels ..... Section F6

**d) FROM WHERE DOES SAVING FAITH COME?**

- Saving Faith is a gift from God ..... Eph 2:8
- Our initial believing is from God ..... Php 1:29
- Jesus is the author and finisher ..... Heb 12:2 - Disciples ask Jesus for more faith ..... Lu 17:5

**e) HOW DOES SAVING FAITH COME TO US?**

- Hearing ..... Ro 10:14-17; Eph 1:13
- The Word of God (Gospel) ..... Ro 10:14-17; Joh 20:31; 2Ti 3:15
- By Preaching .....Ro 10:14-17; Joh 17:20; Ac 8:12

**f) WHAT IS THE OBJECT OF OUR FAITH?**

- The Truth of the Scripture ..... Joh 5:46; Ac 24:14; 26:27 - Roman 4:18-25 includes
  - > sure PROMISES OF GOD ..... Ro 4:20-21 .... Heb 11:13

- > faith in GOD'S POWER ..... Ro 4:21..... 1Co2:4-5
- > faith in GOD HIMSELF ..... Ro 4:24..... Joh 14:1; 2Ch 20:20
- > faith in JESUS OUR LORD ..... Ro 4:24..... Joh 14:1; 6:29; Ac 20:21
- > the GOSPEL OF JESUS ..... Ro 4:25..... see Section F4

**g) WHAT DOES SAVING FAITH IN JESUS CHRIST ACCOMPLISH FOR US?**

- We are saved..... Mk 16:16; Joh 3:16;  
Joh 3:36; Ac 16:31; 1Pe 1:8
- We are declared righteous ..... Ro 3:21-31; 5:1; Ga 2:16; 3:6
- We will not face God's wrath ..... Joh 3:36; 1Th 4:16-18
- Our sins are forgiven ..... Ac 10:43; 13:39; 26:17-18;  
Ro 3:25
- We are adopted into God's family ..... Joh 1:12; Ga 3:26
- We receive the Holy Spirit ..... Ac 11:15-17; Ga 3:14;  
Eph 1:13
- We are preserved until Jesus' return ..... 1Pe 1:5
- We are cleansed (sanctified) ..... Ac 26:17-18
- We have access to God ..... Ro 5:2; Eph 3:12
- We inherit God's promises ..... Ga 3:22; Heb 6:12
- We receive spiritual light..... Joh 12:36,46;  
Heb 6:4,10:32
- We receive eternal life ..... Joh 3:15-16; 6:40,47;  
20:31; Ga 2:20

**h) WHAT DOES FAITH PRODUCE IN US?**

- Peace (with God) ..... Ro 5:1; Isa 26:3
- Hope (of God's glory) ..... Ro 5:2
- Joy ..... Ac 16:34; 1Pe 1:8
- Boldness in preaching ..... 2Co 4:13

**i) WHAT IS THE CONNECTION BETWEEN FAITH AND GOOD WORKS?**

- James 2:14-26
  - > impossible that faith will not produce good deeds..Jas 2:14
  - > words without actions do not help .....Jas 2:15-16
  - > faith without actions also is useless ..... Jas 2:17-20 >
- Abraham's faith led to obedient actions ..... Jas 2:21-24
  - > Rahab acted on her faith that God was with Israel..Jas 2:25
  - > it is still FAITH that justifies (Ro 4:1-3), but not with mere words, but actions that show we truly believe ..... Jas 2:26
- We cannot be saved by doing good works
  - > ministry in Jesus' Name is insufficient ..... Mt 7:22-23
  - > observing the law does not save..... Ro 3:20; 9:30-32
  - > no self-effort leads to faith or salvation ..... Eph 2:8-9; Tit 3:5
- Doing good deeds is commanded by God
  - > but not as a means to salvation ..... Ps 34:14; 37:3; Lu 6:35;

- Heb 13:16
- We are created in Christ to do good works ..... Eph 2:10
- There are rewards for good works ..... Mt 25:34-36; 26:6-13;  
1Pe 2:12; Heb 13:16; Re 2:2;  
Re 22:12

#### j) PEOPLE OF FAITH

- Old Testament People with Enduring Faith..... Heb 11:1-40
- New Testament People of Faith
  - > leper ..... Mt 8:2 > centurion..... Mt 8:10 > ruler  
..... Mt 9:18 > blind men ..... Mt 9:28
  - > diseased ..... Mt 14:36 > Canaanite woman .. Mt 15:28 -
- Victories won by men of faith
  - > Abraham ..... Ge 22:8
  - > Caleb vs Anakite giants ..... Jos 14:12
  - > David vs Goliath ..... 1Sa 17:37
  - > Three Israelites in the fire ..... Da 3:17
  - > Paul & shipwreck ..... Ac 27:25-28:10

### 6. REGENERATION (BORN OF GOD)

Regeneration means that a person receives a new, holy nature from God. We need this new nature to be part of God's Holy Kingdom. a) REFERRED TO AS: - Born of God

- > as opposed to earthly, human birth ..... Joh 1:12,13
- > those born of God do not continue in sin ..... 1Jo 3:9-10
- > those born of God are characterized by LOVE ..... 1Jo 4:7
- > those born of God believe Jesus is the Christ ..... 1Jo 5:1
- Born again (in order to see the Kingdom of God) ..... Joh 3:3,7
- Born of water and the Spirit (enter God's Kingdom)..... Joh 3:5
- Born of the Spirit (as opposed to the flesh) ..... Joh 3:6,8
- New Creation (likened to being IN CHRIST) ..... 2Co 5:17
  - > created new to be like God ..... Eph 4:24
  - > new thinking producing righteousness  
and holiness ..... Eph 4:22-24
- Birth through the word of truth ..... Jas 1:18
  - > is a gift from our heavenly Father..... Jas 1:17
- Birth through the living and enduring word of God ..... 1Pe 1:23
- Washing of Rebirth & Renewal by the Holy Spirit..... Tit 3:5
  - > before we were disobedient and wicked in  
many ways..... Tit 3:3
  - > our salvation comes from God's mercy,  
not our works..... Tit 3:4,5
- b) HOW CAN A PERSON BE "BORN AGAIN"? ..... Joh 3:4
- It is not a fleshly act but a work of the Spirit ..... Joh 3:5,6

- Believe in Jesus and you will have eternal life ..... Joh 3:14-16
- We were dead in sin - now alive in Christ ..... Eph 2:1-7; Ro 6:11
  - > not by works, so none can boast, but
  - by God's grace ..... Eph 2:8,9
- c) **MAN'S PART IN BEING BORN AGAIN**
- We must believe the Gospel, the good news of Jesus ..... Joh 3:14-16
- We must separate ourselves from sinning ..... 1Jo 3:9; Ro 6:12,13
- We must allow our mind and thinking to be transformed... Ro 12:2 > don't let the world shape you and your actions ..... Ro 12:2
  - > we must know and obey God's will for us ..... Ro 12:2
- We must put off the old, corrupted nature ..... Eph 4:22
  - > we must put on the new nature (made like God's).. Eph 4:24 > we must be made new in our way of thinking ..... Eph 4:23
  - > we should purify ourselves by obeying the truth.... 1Pe 1:22,23 > we should love one another fervently..... 1Pe 1:22
- d) **EVIDENCE OF BEING BORN AGAIN**
- No longer bound by sin, not continuing in sin ..... 1 Jo 3:9; Ro 6:1-3
- We now do good works..... Eph 2:10
- The growth of the Fruit of the Spirit is evident ..... Ga 5:22-25 > as opposed to the deeds of the flesh ..... Ga 5:19-21 - See also Spiritual Growth ..... Section F12
- e) **IS ACCOMPLISHED BY THE SPIRIT, NOT BY ANY FLESHLY ACT.....** Joh 3:6
- f) **IT REQUIRES THE DEATH OF THE "FLESH" (SINFUL NATURE).....** Eph 2:1-10
- g) **EVIDENCE IS THE GROWTH OF THE FRUIT OF THE SPIRIT.....** Ga 5:19-23 - See Spiritual Growth ..... Section F12
- h) **REGENERATION IS SOMETIMES MISTAKENLY CONFUSED WITH WATER BAPTISM**
- Two Scriptures associated rebirth and water or washings
  - > born of water/washing of rebirth ..... Joh 3:5; Tit 3:5
- Washing and Water do not necessarily refer to baptism
  - > washing of water by THE WORD ..... Eph 5:26
  - > clean through the WORD I HAVE SPOKEN TO YOU ..... Joh 15:3
  - > born again..through. .WORD OF GOD ..... 1Pe 1:23
- Baptism and salvation are associated ..... 1Pe 3:21 > not because of the water, but a good conscience.... 1Pe 3:21
  - > it saves you BY THE RESURRECTION OF JESUS..... 1Pe 3:21
- Paul baptized only a few of the Corinthians ..... 1Co 1:14-16

- > but he gave birth to them through the GOSPEL..... 1Co 4:15
- Cornelius was saved before he was water-baptized..... Ac 10:44-48

## **7. JUSTIFICATION**

Because we are in Christ Jesus, we are moved out of the place of guilt and God's wrath and into a place of innocence before God and into a loving relationship with Him. God is the Judge and He declares us "Not Guilty" because Jesus has done all that is necessary.

### **a) GOD ALONE IS THE JUDGE AND LAWGIVER**

- God as Judge of all..... Ps 50:6;75:7; Ac 7:7; 10:42;  
Heb 12:23; 2 Ti 4:1
- God is able to save, able to destroy..... Jas 4:12
- God judges through Jesus according to the gospel..... Ro 2:16
- See also ..... Ps 7:11; 9:8; 94:2; Isa 33:22

### **b) BEFORE BEING BORN AGAIN WE WERE ALL GUILTY BEFORE GOD**

Guilt is not particularly a feeling we have, but rather our standing before God the Judge as worthy of the punishment of death.

- The wages of sin is death..... Ro 6:23
- All the unredeemed are guilty ..... Ro 3:19,20; Ga 3:22; 1 Jo 1:8
- Trespassing God's commandments means guilt ..... Le 6:4
  - > disobedience of one law means guilty of all..... Jas 2:10-13
  - > misuse of God's Name is guilt-worthy ..... Ex 20:7; De 5:11
  - > idol worship is guilt-worthy ..... Eze 22:4
  - > fighting against God's people brings guilt ..... 1Sa 26.-9
  - > many, many other actions and thoughts bring guilt before God -

In the Old Testament confession and a trespass offering could clear guilt .....

- > restoration might be necessary ..... Le 5:4-6

- In the New Covenant with Jesus having paid the full price, see Repentance .....

- Guilt may be incurred in our ignorance ..... Section E4
- Forgiveness by Priestly intercession.....Nu 14:18-20; Heb 7:25-27
- Guilt is inherited ..... Ex 34:7; Nu 14:18
  - > unless one is born again ..... Col 2:13-14

### **c) HOW CAN OUR SENTENCE OF "GUILTY" BE CHANGED TO "NOT GUILTY"?**

- Our Innocence is not achieved by trying to keep the Law

- > see Saving Faith ..... Section E5
- > if through the law... Christ died in vain..... Ga 2:19-21
- > law should lead us to Christ to be justified by faith..... Ga 3:24
- > law brings knowledge of our guilt ..... Ro 3:20

- Our Innocence is not achieved by any self-effort

- > no fallen man is innocent before God ..... Job 9:2-3; Ps 143:1-2

- > we are NOT born innocent ..... Job 25:4; Ps 51:5
- > no ritual or actual cleansing can clean us ..... Jer 2:22
- Our Innocence is due to Christ Jesus' actions on our behalf
  - > Christ's righteousness is counted as ours if we have faith in Him...
- ..... Isa 61:10; Jer 23:6; Ro 3:22; 1Co 1:30; 2Co 5:21 >
- by the Blood of Christ ..... Sec E1
- > by the resurrection of Christ Jesus ..... Ro 4:25; 1Co 15:17 -
- It is God's doing (a free gift if we believe)
  - > God justifies men who have faith in Jesus ..... Ro 3:24-26
  - > justification is from God ..... Php 3:9
- > by faith alone ..... Ro 3:28; 4:3; Ga 3:6; Heb 11:4 > leads to
- peace with God ..... Ro 5:1

## **8. ADOPTION**

Relates to the rights, privileges and duties of our being included in God's household, His family.

### **a) OUR RELATIONSHIP WITH GOD BEFORE ADOPTION**

- Alienated from God ..... Col 1:21-23; Eph 4:18 -
- Under God's wrath ..... Col 3:6; Eph 5:6
- Ro 1:18; Joh 3:36

### **b) HOW TO BECOME AN ADOPTED SON OF GOD**

- Predestined by God..... Ro 8:29; Eph 1:5
- Receive Jesus, receive power to become the sons of God...Joh 1:12
- According to God's promise, not natural birth..... Ga 3:29; Ro 9:8
  - > from many nations..... Ga 3:28; Joh 11:51; Ro 9:4
- By faith in Christ Jesus..... Ga 3:26; Eph 1:5; Heb 2:9-11
- Those who have been baptized into Christ ..... Ga 3:27
- Adoption is contrasted with Law ..... Ga 4:5 - Those who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God....Ro 8:14

### **c) CHARACTER OF A SON OF GOD**

- Holy Spirit witness to our adoption ..... Ro 8:15-16
- Separation from sin is necessary ..... 2 Co 6:17-18
- Freedom from bondages ..... Ro 8:21
- As children we should be like God ..... Mt 5:43-48; 1 Jo 3:2
  - > Jesus is the only BEGOTTEN Son ..... Joh 1:18; 3:16; Heb 11:17;
  - 1 Jo 4:9
- Peacemakers called sons of God ..... Mt 5:9
- Blameless and harmless ..... Eph 1:4; Php 2:15-16
- Love for Jesus ..... Joh 8:42
- Love for other children of God ..... Joh 13:34, 35 - Subject to Fatherly discipline of God ..... Heb 12:4-11

### **d) OUR ADOPTION IS COMPLETED AT THE RESURRECTION**

- Completion at the resurrection ..... Lu 20:35-36; Ro 8:19-23;  
1 Jo 3:2
- Co-heirs with Jesus ..... Ga 3:29; Ro 8:17
- Adoption is completed at glorification ..... Ro 8:23; See E12

## **9. BAPTISM IN HOLY SPIRIT**

### **a) PROMISED OUTPOURING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT**

- As an endtime outpouring of God's Spirit ..... Eze 36:26-27
  - > cleansing > new heart > new spirit > God's Spirit in you
  - > in order to keep God's decrees
  - > followed by a coming together of the people  
of God..... Eze 37:
- As an endtime outpouring of God's Spirit ..... Joe 2:28-32
  - > all people > young & old > men & women > prophesy
  - > dreams > visions > signs in heavens
- By John the Baptist
  - > Jesus will baptize in the Holy Spirit ..... Mt 3:11; Lu 3:16; Mk 1:8;  
Joh 1:33
- Jesus promises His disciples ..... Ac 1:5; 11:16
  - > wait for promise, clothed with power ..... Lu 24:49; Ac 1:8
  - > characterized by an overflowing lifestyle ..... Joh 7:37,38
  - > to be given AFTER Jesus was glorified ..... Joh 7:39
  - > Spirit of truth is with you and will be in you..... Joh 14:16-17 >

Jesus must leave to send the Comforter ..... Joh 16:7

### **b) OLD TESTAMENT TYPES OF HOLY SPIRIT BAPTISM**

- We are clearly told that there are two baptisms.....1 Co 10:2; Heb 6:2
  - > The Red Sea is salvation from bondage (water) .... Ex 15
  - > The Jordan is the abundant life (Spirit) ..... Nu 13-14
  - > Born again means seeing the kingdom (water)..... Joh 3:3
  - > Born of water and Spirit means entering ..... Joh 3:5
  - > Altar of burnt offerings for cleansing (water)..... Ex 29:36
  - > Altar of incense (oils) for worship (Spirit) ..... Ex 30-6-8
- The Holy Spirit filled the temple in a CLOUD ..... Ex 40:34,35
- FIRE came down when God showed His glory ..... 2Ch 7:1-3; Ac 2:1-4 - It is as streams  
of WATER in the desert ..... Isa 32:15-20; 35:5,6
- Described as a fountain of WATER ..... Zec 13:1; Joh 4:14 - It is a flood of  
WATER poured out in last days..... Eze 47; Isa 44:3-5
- It is WATER poured out as rain in the end ..... Joe 2:23; Eze 34:26; Jas 5:7
- It is the anointing OIL poured upon the priests..... Le 14:18; Ex 29:7
- It is the OIL pouring from the olive tress ..... Zec 4:12
- It is the OIL in the lamps in the temple..... Le 24:2; Re 2: 1
- It is the OIL of gladness when the Spirit comes ..... Isa 61:1-3

**c) COMING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT-FULFILLMENT OF THE PROMISES**

- Pentecost (Jews first receive Holy Spirit) .....Ac 2:1-4,16-21
  - > sound of a violent wind      > tongues of fire      > speak in tongues
  - > enabled by Holy Spirit      > fulfillment of Joe 2:28-32
- Samaritans - receive the Holy Spirit ..... Ac 8:14-17
  - > accepted Word of God      > Holy Spirit had not come upon them
  - > been baptized "into the Name of the Lord Jesus"
  - > received the Holy Spirit through the laying on of hands
- Gentiles (Cornelius receives the Holy Spirit) ..... Ac 10:44-48
  - > first Gentiles to receive      > while Peter was preaching the gospel
  - > Holy Spirit came on all who heard the message
  - > they knew they received the Holy Spirit because they spoke in tongues
  - > and praised God
  - > commanded to be baptized in the Name of the Lord
- Ephesian believers ..... Ac 19:1-7
  - > believed      > had not received the Holy Spirit
  - > water baptized into the Name of the Lord Jesus
  - > Holy Spirit came on them
  - > they spoke in tongues and prophesied
- The promise is for ALL WHOM THE LORD WILL CALL..... Ac 2:38-39

**d) HOW TO BE BAPTIZED IN THE HOLY SPIRIT**

- Ask the Father in Heaven ..... Lu 11:13
- It is for everyone (not a special few) ..... Ac 2:38-39
- He will not give you a false thing ..... Lu 11:11-13
- Conditioned upon willingness to repent ..... Ac 2:38,39
- Given to those who obey God..... Ac 5:32 - Imparted through:
  - > laying on of apostles' hands ..... Ac 8:14-17; 19:6
  - > laying on of other saints' hands.....Ac 9:17
  - > anointed preaching..... Ac 10:44
  - > times of waiting on God..... Ac 2:4
  - > times of intense prayer ..... Ac 4:24-31
- Holy Spirit is NOT NECESSARILY RECEIVED simply
  - > when one believes and is saved ..... Ac 8:14-17; 19:2
  - > when one has been water-baptized ..... Ac 8:16

**e) RESULTS OF RECEIVING THE HOLY SPIRIT**

- Tongues. .... Ac 2:1-4,16-21; 10:44-48; 19:1-7
- Prophecy..... Joe 2:28-32      -Power..... Lu 24:49; Ac 1:8
- Praising God..... Ac 10:44-48      -Boldness to preach.... Ac 2:1-4,16-21
- Fruit of the Spirit..... Ga 5:22..... see Fruit of Spirit..... Section G1
  - >love      >joy      > peace      > patience      > kindness

- > goodness > faithfulness > gentleness > self-control
- willingness to die for Jesus (witness Gr = martyr)..... Ac 1:8
- ability to minister in the supernatural..... Isa 61:1; 1Co 12; **Note 1:** The Baptism in the Holy Spirit is not a mystical experience for leaders only, neither is it for the first-century church only. It is for all whom the Lord our God calls (Ac 2:29-40). This experience should never be sought only for the power or gifts that accompany it. The proper attitude for receiving the Holy Spirit is with a humble repentant heart and for the purpose of glorifying Jesus (Joh 16:12-15). Sought in this way, it is IMPOSSIBLE that anyone would receive another spirit.

**Note 2:**

The Baptism in the Holy Spirit is not the climax of the Christian life. We should never think that because we have received the Holy Spirit we are better than others, or that we are more spiritual. The Corinthian church had clearly received the Holy Spirit and yet was still very carnal (1Co 1:7; 3:3). Rather, we should think of the Baptism in the Holy Spirit as an INITIAL filling of the Holy Spirit of which there will be many subsequent fillings (Eph 5:18 "Be continuously being filled with the Spirit" = Literal)

- the 120 experienced a second filling after Pentecost ..... Ac 4:31
- we are commanded to be continually filled with the Spirit..... Eph 5:18
  - > the Greek meaning here is continual filling ..... Eph 5:18
  - > filling is related to not walking after the flesh ..... Eph 5:15-18
  - > we are often filled in times of worship and thanksgiving..... Eph 5:19-20
  - > God fills those who are properly submitted to each other..... Eph 5:21 - Paul told Timothy to stir up the gift of the Spirit..... 2 Ti 1:6

- The Ephesian church was in danger of losing the Spirit.... Re 2:5

f) SPECIFIC PEOPLE WHO WERE FILLED WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT

- John Baptist ..... Lu 1:15
- Jesus ..... Lu 4:1
- Pentecost ..... Ac 2:4
- Peter preaching ..... Ac 4:8
- Stephen ..... Ac 7:55
- Elizabeth..... Lu 1:41
- Promise for everyone..... Ac 2:38-39
- Disciples ..... Ac 4:31
- Paul..... Ac 13:9

**Note:** In the Old Testament the Holy Spirit "came upon" individuals, temporarily giving them power from God to accomplish supernatural acts or to prophesy. It is only after Jesus was glorified that the Holy Spirit was "poured out" to the end that all who receive Him may be FILLED with the Spirit. Job 14:17 makes it clear that the Spirit of Truth would not only be with us, but in us. If He was only with us He may leave us. But now that He is in us He is there to stay. Some Old Testament examples of the Holy Spirit coming upon individuals are:

- the Seventy elders ...Nu 11:25
- Othniel ..... Jdg 3:10
- Samson ..... Jdg 14:6
- Balaam ..... Nu 24:2
- Gideon ..... Jdg 6:34
- Saul ..... 1 Sa 10:10

- David..... 1Sa 16:13  
- Ezekiel ..... Eze 2:1-2

-Saul's servants ..... 1 Sa 19:20

**10. PERSEVERANCE**

a) Perseverance is our being safe "in Christ Jesus" until He returns.

- God will not change His promises to us ..... 1Ki 8:56;Eze 12:25; Mt 5:18

b) The question here is not whether I am able to deny Christ. - Rather whether God is able to keep me through the trials...2Ti 1:12

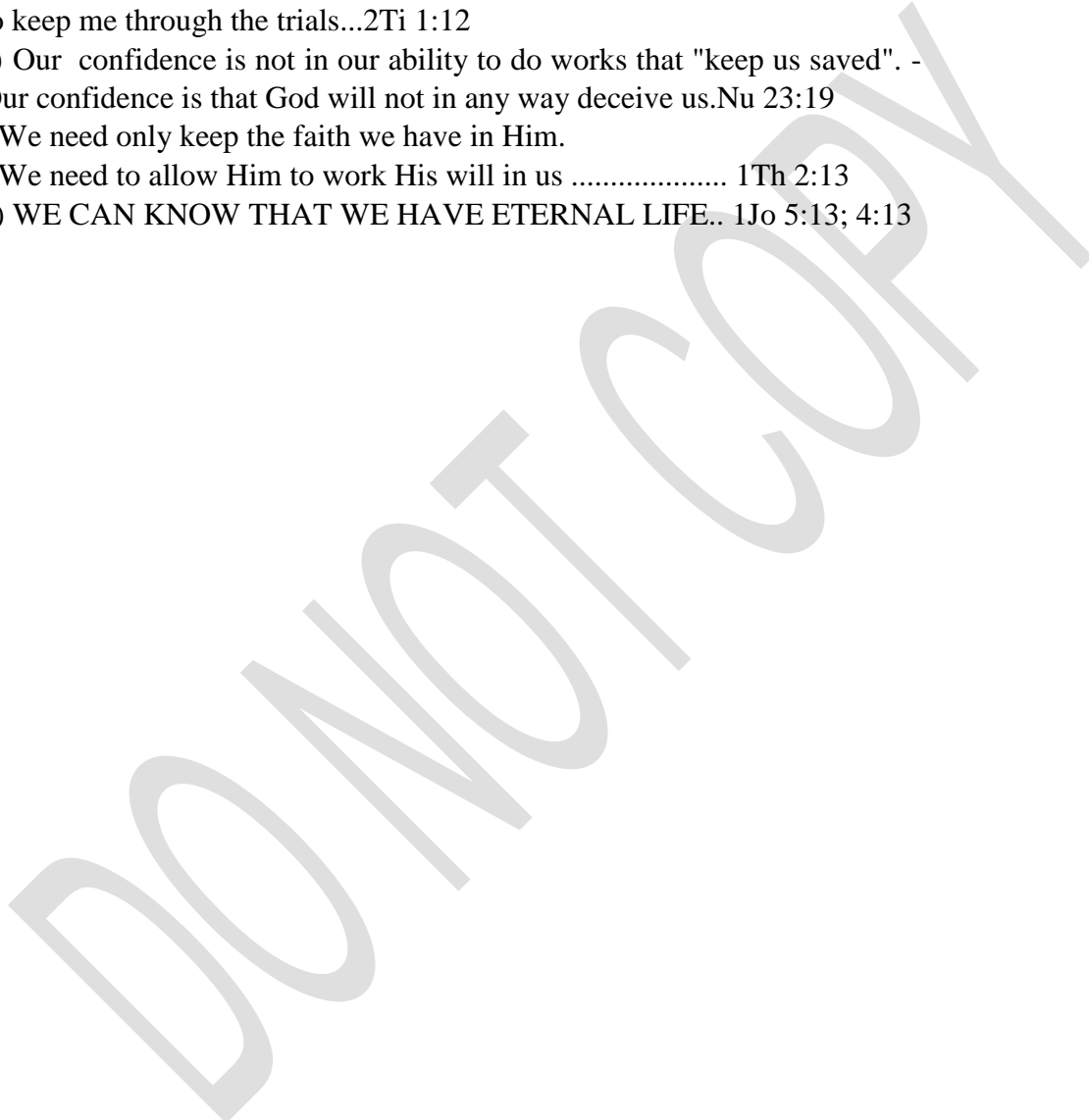
c) Our confidence is not in our ability to do works that "keep us saved". -

Our confidence is that God will not in any way deceive us.Nu 23:19

- We need only keep the faith we have in Him.

- We need to allow Him to work His will in us ..... 1Th 2:13

d) WE CAN KNOW THAT WE HAVE ETERNAL LIFE.. 1Jo 5:13; 4:13



Believe in Jesus and what He has done for us ..... 1Jo5:13 -

Be filled with the Spirit of God ..... 1Jo 4:13

e) GOD IS FOR US, HELPING US

- No external power can separate us from God .....Ro 8:31-39

- Jesus Christ prays for us ..... Heb 7:25

> God always hears Jesus ..... Joh 11:42

> Holy Spirit intercedes for us ..... Ro 8:26

- God always provides a way out of temptations..... Ro 14:4; 1Co 10:13 - Our confidence is in God, not in ourselves ..... 2Ti 1:12

- God is able to keep us ..... Ro 14:4; Jude 24,25

f) PROBLEMS WITH SIMPLY BEING CONFIDENT

- There are dangers of being led astray ..... Mt 24:3-14

- We must guard our hearts..... Heb 3:12-14; Pr 4:23

- We must continue in the faith..... Col 1:21-23

- We must not get proud, lest we fall ..... 1Co 10:12

- We must pay close attention lest we drift away ..... Heb 2:1 - We must be diligent and not lazy ..... Heb 6:11-12

g) POSSIBLE TO DELIBERATELY TURN AWAY FROM GOD

- Heb 6:4-6 & 10:26-27 If we DELIBERATELY sin and consistently wander away from the truth, it is possible to end up in unbelief.

BUT NOTE that the Bible says He has better thoughts than that concerning us (Jer 29:11). Knowing the horror of falling away should be enough to keep a believer faithful.

- It is possible for individual believers to deny Jesus and turn their back to God, but God has provided His Word, ministers in the Church, and the Holy Spirit so that those who are chosen will be kept from turning away.

- If we deny God, He will also deny us.....2Ti 2:12

- Turning from God is worse than never having

known Him..... 2Pe 2:20-22

- Trusting in works for salvation can sever us from Him .... Ga 5:3,4

- Warning: we can fall even as those in the wilderness ..... 1Co 10:5-12

- Disobedience can cause us to lose what was ours ..... Mt 21:43

- THEREFORE, we must guard our hearts from

sin's deceit..... Heb 3:13,14 h) MIXTURE IN

THE CHURCH

- Jesus warns that the Church WILL HAVE true believers and pretenders.

> wheat and weeds ... Mt13:24-30 > good fish and bad..... Mt 13:47-50

> these are intermingled and difficult to separate ..... Mt 13:28-30

- Therefore we must not look at others' faithfulness,

but to our own..... Ga 6:4; Php 2:12 i)

A TEACHING PASSAGE ..... 1Pe 1:1-9 - Elect

of God... He chose us ..... 1Pe 1:2

- Chosen according to God's foreknowledge ..... 1Pe 1:2

- We must allow the Holy Spirit works to purify us ..... 1Pe 1:2  
We are saved for obedience to Jesus Christ..... 1Pe 1:2 - We are being justified by His blood..... 1Pe 1:2
- New Birth by God's mercy ..... 1Pe 1:3
- Our inheritance is safe in heaven ..... 1Pe 1:4
- God's power will shield us until the end ..... 1Pe 1:5
- Suffering from trials ..... 1Pe 1:6
- Trials are not to defeat us but to prove our faith..... 1Pe 1:7
- Our faith is not by sight..... 1Pe 1:8
- Our faith in God has Salvation as its goal..... 1Pe 1:9

#### 11. SANCTIFICATION- HOLINESS

Sanctification deals with our character and conduct as God's children. God declares us righteous (Justification) but then by the Holy Spirit we become righteous. This is an ongoing process started at repentance. Holiness means being separated from sin and fully dedicated to God. a) SEPARATION

- In the world but not of it..... Joh 15:18-19; 17:14-16;  
1Jo 4:5-6; 1Co 2:12; Jas 4:4
- Be not unequally yoked with unbelievers .....2Co 6:14-18 - Do not love the things of the world ..... 1Jo 2:15-17; 1Jo 4:4
- Do not share in the sins of Babylon..... Re 18:4-5
- Old Testament circumcision represented separation unto God
  - > for those under the law ..... Ro 2:25
  - > was meant to be a heart separated to God ..... Ro 2:28-29

#### b) EXODUS FROM EGYPT REPRESENTED SEPARATION UNTO GOD

Pharaoh tempted Israel not to fully separate themselves.

Satan likewise tempts us to not fully separate ourselves unto God. -

Pharaoh-stay in the land of Egypt and sacrifice to God .Ex 8:25 > Satan wants us to be religious but not separated from sin.

- Pharaoh - don't go too far from Egypt ..... Ex 8:28 > Satan wants us to continually associate with sin.
- Pharaoh -let only the men go, not their families .....Ex 10:11
  - > Satan wants us to become religious BUT not care for our homes.
- Pharaoh-don't take your wealth with you ..... Ex 10:24
  - > Satan wants us to use our wealth somewhere other than for God. c) GOD

#### SEPARATES IN HIS WORK

- Creation
  - > light is separated from darkness ..... Ge 1:4
  - > sky is separated from earth ..... Ge 1:6-8
  - > seas are separated from dry land ..... Ge 1:9-10
- Our sin separates us from God ..... Isa 59:2
- Birth separates a child from his mother ..... Ga 1:15
- Abram is separated from his homeland ..... Ge 12:1

- Exodus, Israel is separated from Egypt ..... Ex 12:1-39 - Clothing and planting rules (no mixing).....De 22:9-11
- Believers are to be separated from the world ..... 2Co 6:17-18
- Apostles are separated to minister ..... Ro 1:1; Ac 13:2 - The righteous will be separated from the wicked ..... Mt 25:32
- d) SANCTIFICATION-HOLINESS
- Produced by God (Father, Son & Holy Spirit)
  - > Father..... Eze 37:28; 1Th 5:23; Jude 1
  - > Jesus ..... Heb 2:11; 13:12
  - > Holy Spirit..... Ro 15:16;1Co 6:11;2Th 2:13
  - > through Jesus' work ..... Heb 10:10; 13:12
  - > through Word of God .....Joh 17:17-19; Eph 5:26
  - > by God's corrections ..... Heb 12:10; Jas 1:2-4
- Holiness is the character of God ..... See Index
  - > we are to be holy as He is holy ..... 1Pe 1:16
  - > endtimes-the holy will remain holy..... Re 22:11
- Holy men & women of old ..... 2Pe 1:21; 1Pe 3:5
- Church to be a holy priesthood & holy nation .....1Pe 2:5,9
- Can't inherit the kingdom of God without holiness..... 1Co 6:9-11
- Beauty of Holiness.....1 Ch 16:29; 2 Ch 20:21; Ps 29:2; 96:9
- Highway of Holiness..... Isa 35:8
- Rejoicing in Holiness.....Ps 60:6; 97:12; 108:7
- Body, Soul & Spirit to be sanctified..... 1Th5:23-24
- Avoidance of sexual immorality & lust..... 1Th 4:3-8

## **12. GLORIFICATION**

### **a) THE MYSTERY OF THE AGES**

- Christ in you, the hope of glory ..... Col 1:27 - Christ's ultimate purpose: bringing many sons to glory..... Heb 2:10

### **b) WE WILL NOT ALWAYS BE IN THESE FALLEN BODIES**

- Righteous will shine in the kingdom ..... Mt 13:43
- We will be changed ..... 1Co 15:51 - Our lowly bodies will be transformed ..... Php 3:20-21 - What will our spiritual bodies be like?
  - > like Jesus' glorious body ..... Php 3:21
  - > with a new splendor ..... 1Co 15:40
  - > imperishable ..... 1Co 15:42
  - > a spiritual body ..... 1Co 15:44
  - > we will be like Jesus ..... 1Co 15:49
- We shall appear with Christ in glory ..... Col 3:4 - When will we be changed?

- > when the last trumpet sounds ..... 1Co 15:51-52
- > the dead will be raised with new bodies ..... 1Co 15:52 >
- those still alive will be changed ..... 1Co 15:52
- > when Jesus appears we shall be like Him..... 1Jo 3:2,3
- > because of this hope we purify ourselves ..... 1Jo 3:2,3 c) JESUS

#### GLORIFIED

- Possessed heavenly glory from all eternity ..... Joh 17:5
- Revealed in the incarnation ..... Joh 1:14
- Transfiguration ..... Mk 9:23; Lu 9:32
- > Moses and Elijah appear in glorious form ..... Lu 9:30,31
- Seen in the Crucifixion Joh 7:39; 12:28-33
- Seen after the Resurrection ..... Lu24:36-39
- Seen in Revelations ..... Re 1:13-16; 19:11-12 - Will be seen at His second coming ..... Mt 16:27

#### d) SUFFERING

- Endure suffering to share His glory..... Ro 8:17; 2Ti 2:10; 1Pe 5:1
- Glory far outweighs the suffering ..... Ro 8:18; 2Co 4:17; Eph 1:18
- Trials test our faith and produce glory ..... 1Pe 1:6,7 - God's Spirit and glory rest especially on him who suffers.. 1Pe 4:14
- Stephen saw God's glory as he suffered martyrdom .....Ac 7:55
- Those who pass through tribulation highly honored ..... Re 2:10; 7:9-17

#### e) QUALITIES OF JESUS' RESURRECTED BODY

- He talked..... Mt 28:9-10,17-20
- Disciples recognized Him ..... Mt 28:9
- His hands and side remained marked by wounds ..... Joh 20:20
- He ate with them ..... Lu 24:42-43 > He is not a spirit; the body is physical ..... Lu 24:37-40
- > His body was touchable ..... Lu 24:39; Joh 20:27; Mt 28:9
- He took a different form ..... Mk 16:12; Lu 24:13-32
- He appeared and disappeared ..... Lu 24:31
- He entered through closed doors ..... Joh 20:26
- He did many signs ..... Joh 20:30 - He was lifted up to heaven ..... Ac 1:9

## **F. CHURCH**

### **TABLE OF CONTENTS - THIS SECTION**

#### **F1. CHURCH-INTRODUCTION**

#### **F2. THE MISSION OF THE CHURCH**

#### **F3. GOSPEL-THE GOOD NEWS**

#### **F4. THE GOSPEL, AS OUTLINED IN ROMANS**

#### **F5. GOSPEL AS IN EPHESIANS, PHILIPPIANS & COLOSSIANS**

#### **F6. FALSE GOSPELS**

**F7. CHURCH GOVERNMENT**

**F8. CORRECTION & FORGIVENESS**

**F9 GIFTED PEOPLE IN THE CHURCH UNIVERSAL**

**F10. SPIRITUAL GIFTS IN THE BODY OF CHRIST**

**F11. SPIRITUAL GIFTS IN CHURCH MEETINGS**

**F12. SPIRITUAL GROWTH 1.**

**CHURCH-INTRODUCTION**

a) DEFINITION

The CHURCH is made up of those who have had their sins forgiven because of the shed blood of Jesus at Calvary ..... Re 1:5; 7:14 - Each local gathering of believers is called the church.

> where 2 or 3 are gathered in Jesus' Name,

He is there..... Mt 18:20

- Also, all the believers in the world are called the Church... Mt 16:18

Note: The Scriptures make a distinction between the local church and the universal Church. All people who believe in Jesus for salvation are a part of the Universal Church But unless they join themselves to a local body of believers, i.e. a local church, it is difficult to conceive what membership in the Church Universal means. Examples of local church: Paul wrote to local churches (e.g.. Galatia) who had specific leaders (Ro 16:1,5). Jesus too addressed local assemblies, pointing out their specific needs as a body (Re 23). These local believers gather together regularly (Heb

10:25) for prayer, teaching and fellowship (Ac 2:42). Only then can they truly understand what it is to be true members of the Universal Church made up of people from every tribe, tongue and nation (Re 5:9). - In Greek, "church" means "the called-out ones".

b) FOUNDATION OF THE CHURCH

- The Church belongs to Jesus Christ ..... Mt 16:18 .

- It is founded on the confession (the rock) that Jesus is the Chnst (Messiah), the Son of the Living God ..... Mt 16:16-18

The name "Peter" means "a small stone."

The word "rock" means "a huge rock"... bedrock.

Note: It is NOT Peter himself who is the foundation of the Church, but his confession of Jesus, the "huge rock".

Note: The acknowledgment of Jesus as Christ is the issue (Mt 16:20).

- To whom are the keys of the kingdom given?

> Is it Peter only? No, see ..... Mt 18:18; Joh20:19-23 The keys are given to ALL the disciples in the Church of Jesus.

> Note: Peter used the keys to "...open the door of faith unto the Gentiles" (Ac 14:27).

> Note: Paul used the keys "...form Christ Jesus I have begotten you through the gospel" I Co 4:15

> For he that wrought effectually in Peter to the apostleship of the circumcision, the same was mighty in me toward the Gentiles:" Ga2:8

- Jesus Christ is the Chief Cornerstone (meaning the top stone of a pyramid) of the Church... Eph 2:20 (He is over the Church-the Head)
- The apostles and prophets are the foundational and foundation-laying ministries Eph 2:20. (The leaders are under the Church - supporting.)
- The Spirit-empowered Church began on Day of Pentecost..... Ac 2:1-47
- > Old Testament believers - "church in the wilderness"..... Ac 7:37-38
- c) NAMES GIVEN TO MEMBERS OF THE CHURCH
- Believers ..... Ac4:32;5:14
- Saints ..... Ac9:13; ICo 1:2;Re 13:7
- Brethren ..... Ac 12:17;Ro 1:13;Mt 23:8-10
- Christians ..... Ac 11:26; 26:28 -
- Elect..... Mk 13:27; Ro 8:33
- d) DESCRIPTION OF THE CHURCH
- God's workmanship ..... Eph 2:10
  - > created to do good works ..... Eph 2:10
  - > created to be holy ..... Eph 4:24
- Citizens of God's Kingdom ..... Eph2:19
  - > people of God (separated unto God) ..... 2Co 6:16-17
- Members of God's Household ..... Eph 2:19; ITi 3:15
  - > children of God ..... Eph 1:5; 3:14-15; 5:8
- Temple of God ..... Eph 2:20-22
  - > God lives in it by His Spirit ..... Eph 2:22; ICo 3:16
  - > to be a holy priesthood ..... IPe 2:5
- Bride of Christ ..... Eph 5:25-32; Re 19:7; 21:2; 22:17
  - > loved by Christ..... Eph 5:25
  - > gave Himself for the Church ..... Eph 5:25 > cleansed
- the Church ..... Eph 5:26
  - > they will be united ..... Eph 5:31-32
  - > Christ as the Bridegroom ..... Job 3:29; 2Co 11:2
  - > wedding supper of the Lamb ..... Re 19:9
  - > great mystery - Jesus & Church..... Eph 5:29-32
- Body of Christ..... Eph 1:22-23; 4:15; ICo 12:27; Col 1:24
  - > Jesus lives in us ..... Ga 2:20
  - > Christ as the Head ..... Eph 1:22; 4:15; 5:23; Col 1:18; 2:19
  - > interconnected ..... Eph4:11-16;ICo12:26;Ga6:2
  - > unity ..... Eph 4:4-6
- Temple of the Holy Spirit ..... Eph 2:20-22; ICo 3:16-17; 6:19; IPe 2:4-8

- > people are living stones ..... IPe 2:5
- > Jesus is the Chief Cornerstone ..... IPe 2:6; Eph 2:20
- > Apostles and Prophets are the foundation ..... Eph 2:20
- A Family ..... Eph2:19
  - > all have one Father ..... Isa 63:16; 9:6; Ho 11:1;  
Ro 8:15; Job 1:12; Ga 4:5,6;  
2Co 6:18
  - > called brothers and sisters ..... Mt 12:50; ITi 5:2; Jas 2:15
- A Flock ..... Isa 40:11; Ezc 34; Zee 9:16;  
Joh 10; Lu 12:32; Ac 20:29
  - > Jesus is the (Chief) Shepherd ..... Joh 10; Mt 18:10-14;  
IPe 5:1-4
  - > We are His sheep ..... Isa 40:11; Lu 12:32; Joh 10

- > False shepherds called hirelings ..... Joh 10:13
  - > False brethren called wolves in sheep's clothing.... Mt 7:15; Ac 20:29 >
  - Satan is the (Chief) wolf..... Lu 10:3; Joh 10:12
- c) ISRAEL AND THE CHURCH
- Much of what belonged only to Israel is now for the Whole Church.  
..... Ro 2:28-29; Ga 3:26-29; Ro 4:11-12,16-18; 9:7-8

- Yet there is a definite future for Israel as a nation .....Ro 11:1-36
  - > God did not reject His people ..... Ro 11:1
  - > a remnant was chosen by grace..... Ro 11:2-6
  - > Israel erred by trying to be saved by works ..... Ro 11:6-7
  - > Israel's fall was the cause of Gentile's salvation... Ro 11:11
  - > Gentile nations will make Israel jealous ..... Ro 11:11
  - > Israel will again be accepted, at the end ..... Ro 11:12,15
  - > Israel as a natural branch is easily grafted in ..... Ro 11:24
  - > Israel is hard against the gospel now ..... Ro 11:25
  - > Israel will enter when God finishes with  
the Gentiles..... Ro 11:25-27
  - > God's promises to Israel are not changed ..... Ro 11:29 > Israel  
will enter by grace, not works..... Ro 11:30-32

f) THE CHURCH PICTURED IN EPHESIANS

- Gathering a church ..... Eph 1:22
- Growing a body ..... Eph 1:23
- Building a temple/building ..... Eph 2:21-22
- Raising a family ..... Eph 3:15
- Maturing a man ..... Eph2:15;4:13
- Adorning a bride ..... Eph5:23-33
- Aiming/training a soldier ..... Eph 6:10-18

**2. THE MISSION OF THE CHURCH**

a) GOD'S COMMISSION TO HIS PEOPLE

- Adam, Noah: be fruitful and multiply ..... Ge 1:28;9:1-7
- Abraham: through you all nations blessed ..... Ge 12:1-3; 18:18
  - > Repeated to Isaac..... Ge 26:4
  - > Repeated to Jacob ..... Ge 28:14
  - > Revealed to David ..... ICh 16:15-24
  - > Revealed to Korah ..... Ps 47
  - > Revealed to Isaiah ..... Isa 49:12; 11:9-12
- Moses: to be a kingdom of priests ..... Ex 19:6
- Jesus: the Great Commission spoken ..... Mt 28: Mk 16: Lu 24
- Paul: the gospel to the Gentiles ..... Ac 9:15;Ro 15:7-21
- Peter: the gospel to all peoples ..... Ac 10:9-48;11:15-18; IPe 2:9

b) GOD'S LOVE FOR THE NATIONS

- Many heathen in the Old Testament believed in Jehovah
    - >Melchizedek ..... Ge 14:18-20
    - >Jethro..... Ex 18:9-12
      - > Nebuchadnezzar ..... Da 4:34-37
      - > Ruth ..... Ru 1:16,17
      - > Rahab ..... Jos 6:25; Heb 11:31
      - > Ninevites ..... Jonah
      - > woman of Zerapheth ..... IKi 17:8
      - > Naaman ..... 2Ki5:15
  - God's children testify to Him before the nations
    - > Joseph-Egyptians > Elisha-Syrians
    - > Naomi-Moabites > David-Philistines
    - > Moscs-Midianites > Elijah- Phoenicians
    - > Solomon-Arabians > Daniel-Babylonians
    - > the spies — Canaanites > Jonah — Assyrians
  - People of every nation will be in the kingdom ..... Da 7:14; Re 7:9,10
  - > God's Spirit will be poured out on all flesh ..... Joe 2:28
  - > the nations will desire God's blessings..... Isa 2:2,3; 55:5,6  
Isa 60:3; Zec 8:23
  - > John's great vision of a kingdom full of people..... Re 5:9,10;7:9,10
- c) JESUS, THE MESSIAH FOR ALL PEOPLES
- The four women of Jesus'genealogy are Gentiles ..... Mt 1
    - >Tamar-Canaanite >Rahab-Canaanite >Ruth-Moabite > Bathsheba-Hittite
  - Prophecies concerning Jesus (Luke)
    - > Zechariah's prophecy ..... Lu 1:72-79 > Simeon's blessing..... Lu 2:29-32
      - > the Angels' announcement..... Lu 2:10,14
      - > John's proclamation ..... Lu 3:4-6
  - Jesus' ministry as seen in Matthew
    - > Kings of East (perhaps China) come to worship Him..... Mt 2:1-12
    - > begins ministry among the Gentiles ..... Mt 4:15-23
    - > told disciples to love their enemies ..... Mt 5:44
    - > announces all nations are included in His kingdom..... Mt 8:11
      - > prepares disciples to testify to the Gentiles ..... Mt 10:18
      - > ministry to the Gentiles prophesied ..... Mt 12:18-21
      - > only two people said to have great faith
  - Roman centurion ..... Mt 8:10
  - Syrophenidan woman.....Mt 15:28
    - > Jesus feeds 4000 Gentiles (Tyre/Sidonese) ..... Mt 15:29-39
    - > Kingdom to be taken from Israel, given

- to Gentiles ..... Mt 21:42-43
  - > Kingdom to be preached to all people
- before the end ..... Mt 24:14
  - > disciples to be made from all nations ..... Mt 28:19
- d) MISSION AND THE BOOK OF ACTS
- The Baptism in the Holy Spirit: power to testify..... Ac 1:8; 4:7-10 >
- Jerusalem = locally > Judea = regionally
  - > Samaria = across cultural, racial barriers
  - > To the uttermost parts of the earth - to all peoples
- The outpouring on Pentecost
  - > gift of tongues enabled 12 nations to hear the truth ..... Ac 2:5-13
  - > Peter has new power and boldness to testify ..... Ac 2:14-40
  - > the Apostles begin to perform signs and wonders ..... Ac 2:43,3:
  - > the Church experiences tremendous growth ..... Ac 2:41; 4:4; 6:7 - Yet the Apostles still unwilling
    - > testifying on Pentecost to nations was involuntary..... Ac 2:5-13
    - > for 20 years didn't take gospel outside Jerusalem.. Ac 5:28:6:7
    - > again involuntarily, God scatters them via persecution..... Ac 8:1-4
    - > finally, Philip preaches to foreigners voluntarily... Ac 8:4-17 >
- God confronts Peter's unwillingness three times.... Ac 10: > Peter meets opposition for this ..... Ac 11:1-18 > finally, the church leaders acknowledge missions.. Ac 15:
  - > by Paul's death gospel reached whole Roman Empire ..... Ro 15:18-24
- The church in Antioch became first to SEND missionaries ..... Ac 13:1-4 - Paul became the first missionary of the Church ..... Ac 13:1-4 - Acts records Paul's 3 missionary journeys ..... Ac 13: -28:
- Acts strongly supports a team mission concept ..... Ac 16:2;20:4
- 3. GOSPEL-THE GOOD NEWS
- The gospel (good news) is that Jesus has come. Jesus died on the cross for our sins to mend our broken relationship with God. Jesus is the Savior (deliverer) Who came to save (deliver) us from the penalty of sin (death) and the power of sin (bad habits and other bondages). Through faith in Him and the victory He won through His death, burial and resurrection, we are reconciled to God. See ICo 15:1-4; Heb 2:14,15; Ro 3:21-26. a) PRECONDITIONS TO THE GOSPEL
- see Fall of Man ..... Section D5 - see Sin ..... Section D1

**b) CONTENT**

- Promised in the Old Testament ..... Ro 1:2; 2 Pe 1:18-21 foretold  
 ..... Ge 3:15; Isa 29:18;  
 41:27; 52:7; (61:1-3 with Lu 4:18,19)
- Jesus Christ is the fulfillment ..... Ro 1:3-4
- God frees us from wrath through Christ ..... 2Co 5:19
- Concerns Jesus Christ ..... Ro 1:1-4
  - > born of a virgin ..... Isa 7:14; Mt 1:23
  - > truly flesh, from King David's line ..... Ro 1:3-4; 2Ti 2:8; see B11
  - > truly the Son of God..... Ro 1:4; see B7, B8
  - > lived a completely sinless life ..... Heb 4:15
  - > crucified on the Roman cross ..... Ac 2:23
  - > Christ died for our sins ..... ICo 15:3
  - > Jesus' blood satisfied God ..... Ac 20:28; Ro 5:9-11;  
 Heb 9:14-15
  - > He was buried ..... ICo 15:4
  - > resurrected from the dead..... Ro 13-4; ICo 15:4; Ac 2:24
  - > appeared to many..... ICo 15:5-8
  - > ascended into heaven - glorified ..... Ac 1:9-11; IPe 1:21
  - > will come again as Judge ..... 2Th 1:7-8; Ac 1:9-11
- Our part in responding to the Gospel
  - > we must confess Jesus is Lord..... Ro 10:9 > we  
 must believe God resurrected Him ..... Ro 10:9
  - > we must repent and be forgiven ..... Ac 3:19; 5:31; Ro 2:4;  
 2Pe 3:9; Lu 24:47

**c) CHARACTERISTICS OF THE GOSPEL**

- Is the power of God to save us ..... Ro 1:16; ICo 1:18; 15:1-2
- Shows the grace of God ..... Ac 14:3;20:32
- Acceptance of the Gospel is associated with
  - > repentance..... Mk 1:15
  - > faith, needing to believe ..... Mk 1:15; Heb 4:2
- First announced to Mary ..... Lu 1:26-38
  - > Mary was a virgin ..... Lu 1:27,34
  - > Jesus was a child of the Holy Spirit ..... Lu 1:35
- Announced to the shepherds ..... Lu 2:8-20
- Brings peace ..... Eph 6:15
- Brings hope ..... Col 1:23;IPe 1:3
- Brings life ..... 2Ti 1:10
- Is preached to everyone ..... Mk 16:15;Col 1:23;Ac 20:21
- Is absolute and exclusive..... Ga 1:8,9 - Is associated with
  - > sufferings ..... Mk8:35; 10:29,30; 2Ti 3:12
  - > healing..... Mt 4:23 > miracles as confirmation  
 ..... Ac 14:3

d) **PREACHING OF THE GOSPEL BY THE APOSTLES**

- Peter > on Pentecost..... Ac 2:14-41 > cripple is healed..... Ac 3:11-26  
> Sanhedrin..... Ac 4:8-12 > escape from prison.. Ac 5:29-32
- Stephen before the Sanhedrin ..... Ac 7:2-53
- Paul > at Antioch..... Ac 13:16-41 > in Athens..... Ac 17:22-31  
> before Felix..... Ac 24:10-21 > before Agrippa..... Ac 26:2-29

**4. THE GOSPEL, AS OUTLINED IN ROMANS**

a) **PRECONDITIONS**

- Gospel was **PROMISED** in the Old Testament ..... Ro 1:2
- Because of **ADAM**, we all inherited death ..... Ro 5:12-14 - All are under **WRATH** of God  
> the **GENTILE** nations are under God's wrath ..... Ro 1:18-32  
> the **JEWS** are under God's wrath..... Ro 2:1-29 >
- Jews and Gentiles alike under **SIN** ..... Ro 3:9  
> all need to be **SAVED** because all have sinned ..... Ro 3:23
- Purpose of the **LAW** was to point out sin..... Ro 7:7-25 - Gospel is **POWER OF GOD** for salvation..... Ro 1:16

b) **COMPONENTS OF THE GOSPEL**

- Concerns **JESUS CHRIST**, God's Son ..... Ro 13-4  
> truly **FLESH**, from King David's line ..... Ro 1:3-4  
> truly the Son of God (**DIVINE**) ..... Ro 1:3-4  
> **RESURRECTED** from the dead ..... Ro 13-4  
> Jesus Christ is our **LORD** ..... Ro 13-4
  - Crucial element for us is **FAITH** (believing) ..... Ro 1:53  
> all people called to **BELIEVE** in Jesus ..... Ro 1:5-6  
> a righteousness from God by **FAITH** ..... Ro 1:17  
> a righteousness **APART FROM THE LAW** ..... Ro 3:21  
> this righteousness is by **FAITH** in Jesus..... Ro 3:22  
> redemption is by God's **GRACE** ..... Ro 3:24  
> our part is to have Faith in His **BLOOD** ..... Ro 3:25  
> saved by **FAITH**, not by law ..... Ro 3:27-31  
> Abraham was **JUSTIFIED BY FAITH**, not by works..... Ro 4:1-25  
> faith brings **PEACE** with God ..... Ro 5:1-2  
> God will save us because of **JESUS' BLOOD**..... Ro 5:9-11 > all depends on God's **MERCY**, not our efforts ..... Ro 9:16 > salvation by grace, **NOT WORKS** ..... Ro 11:5-6
- c) **CONTENT OF THE GOSPEL**
- God's **LOVE** while we were yet sinners ..... Ro 5:8  
> Christ died for us

- Our JUSTIFICATION came by Christ Jesus ..... Ro3:24 - Christ DIED for us while we were powerless..... Ro 5:6
- Christ ROSE from the dead ..... Ro 145
- We must CONFESS Jesus is Lord..... Ro 10:9
- We must BELIEVE God resurrected Him ..... Ro 10:9
- We are to be BAPTIZED .....Ro 6:3-14
- God gives the HOLY SPIRIT to us ..... Ro 5:5
- We are to TURN AWAY FROM SIN .....Ro 6:1-23
- Life in the Spirit and our ADOPTION ..... Ro 8:1-17
- Prepared for the COMING OF THE LORD JESUS ..... Ro 13:8-14
- We will all be JUDGED by God (not man) .....Ro 14:10
- Judging according to the GOSPEL ..... Ro 2:16
- LIVING and the DEAD are under His lordship..... Ro 14:9
- Future GLORIFICATION..... Ro 8:18-39
- Likely to SUFFER for our faith ..... Ro 53
- Suffering works CHARACTER in us ..... Ro5:3-4
- Jew or Gentile all SAVED similarly ..... Ro 10:12-13 - ISRAEL will be saved when the fullness of the GENTILES have been saved ..... Ro 11:25
- God's intention is that ALL NATIONS believe..... Ro 16:26

**5. THE GOSPEL AS OUTLINED IN EPHESIANS, PHILIPPIANS & COLOSSIANS**

- | a) GOSPEL   | Eph      | Php   | Col      |
|---|----------|-------|----------|
| - Salvation is in the HEAVENLY realm .....              | 1:3      |       | 1:5      |
| - Concerns Christ JESUS                                 |          |       |          |
| > truly GOD .....                                       |          | 2:6   | 1:15,2:9 |
| > truly HUMAN.....                                      |          | 2:7-8 | 2:9      |
| - We were chosen and PREDESTINED in Christ .....        | 1:4,5,11 |       |          |
| > BEFORE THE CREATION of the world .....                | 1:4      |       |          |
| > to be HOLY and BLAMELESS in God's sight ..            | 1:4      |       |          |
| > to be ADOPTED as His sons through Jesus Christ..      | 1:5      |       |          |
| > in accordance with HIS PLEASURE and will ....         | 1:5      |       |          |
| > to the praise of His glorious GRACE .....             | 1:6,12   |       |          |
| - In Jesus we have REDEMPTION through HIS BLOOD... ..   | 1:7      |       | 1:14     |
| > the FORGIVENESS of sins .....                         | 1:7      |       |          |
| > in accordance with the riches of His GRACE ...        | 1:7      |       |          |
| - Purpose - CHRIST AS FIRST in heaven & earth ... ..    | 1:9-10   |       |          |
| - We need to BELIEVE the gospel of truth .....          | 1:13     |       |          |
| - Believers marked with HOLY SPIRIT .....               | 1:13     |       |          |
| > as a deposit guaranteeing our INHERITANCE... ..       | 1:14     | 1:6   |          |
| > full inheritance waits until the rest are saved ..... | 1:14     |       | 1:12     |
| - Christ's RESURRECTION from death .....                | 1:19-21  |       |          |
| - the same POWER works in believers .....               | 1:18-19  |       |          |

- > Christ is seated at the right hand of God..... 1:20.....2:9
- Christ is SUPREME ..... 1:22 ..... 2:9-11
- > the Church is a BODY (not merely individuals).. 1:23 ..... 1:18 - We were DEAD in our sins..... 2:1-3
  - > we followed the ways of the WORLD ..... 2:2 ..... 1:21
  - > we followed the ruler of the air (SATAN) ..... 2:2
  - > we satisfied our SINFUL NATURE ..... 2:3
- We were under God's WRATH..... 2:3
  - > God's LOVE, MERCY & GRACE saves us..... 2:4-9 ..... 2:1
  - > we are NOT SAVED BY OURSELVES OR BY WORKS..... 2:8-9
  - > GOOD WORKS were prepared for us in advance ..... 2:10 - BLOOD OF CHRIST reconciles us to God..... 2:11-13
- LAW OF MOSES IS ABOLISHED in Christ ..... 2:15 ..... 3:9..... 2:14
  - > Jews and Gentiles are saved THROUGH THE CROSS ..... 2:16,17. .... 3:18..... 3:11 - GOD the FATHER is our destination .....2:18
    - > CHRIST JESUS, the Son, made the way .....2:18
    - > SPIRIT leads us to the Father by Son's way ..... 2:18
- God lives in and among us by His Spirit ..... 2:22
- WE WILL BE KEPT if we continue in our faith ..... 1:21-23
- We also share in His SUFFERING .....1:29..... 1:24 - Christ Jesus is COMING AGAIN ..... 1:6; 3-20..... 3:4
- Our GLORIFICATION with JESUS ..... 3:4; 1:27

**6. FALSE GOSPELS**

a) CHURCH HAS SAFEGUARDS AGAINST FALSE TEACHING

- Church ministry to protect believers ..... Eph 4:11-16
- Fellowship of believers Heb 10:23-25
- Word of God (BIBLE) is truth ..... Joh 17:17
  - > God's Word is exalted even above His Name ..... Ps 138:2
  - > transgressors do not keep God's Word ..... Ps 119:158
- Holy Spirit guides us... ..... Isa 30:21; Pr 3:5-6; Joh 10:4; 16:12-13
- Be firm in the faith ..... 2Pe 3:17

b) GOD'S JUDGMENT ON FALSE TEACHERS

- Condemnation to those who teach falsely ..... Ga 1:8,9

c) FALSE TEACHERS

- Promise liberty but bring bondage ..... 2Pe 2:19; Ga 2:4
  - > falsehood does not satisfy ..... Isa 32:6
- Teach damnable heresies ..... 2Pe 1:21-2:2
  - > and the people love it ..... Jer 5:31
- Have false visions and false prophecies ..... Jer 14:14-15; Jer 23:25-32

- Have false dreams ..... Jer 23:32; Zec 10:2
- Pretend to be Christians (sheep) ..... Mt 7:15; Ga 2:4; 2Pe 2:1-3
  - > watch people's lives, not only words ..... Mt 7:16-20
- Sometimes do great signs and miracles ..... Mt 24:24; Mk 13:22
- False apostles ..... 2Co 11:13
- False teachers ..... 2Pe 2:1
- False prophets ..... La 2:14; Eze 13:1-23;
  - IJo 4:1; Re 16:13; 19:20
  - > test for a false prophet ..... De 13:1-3
- False brethren..... Ga 2:4; 2Co 11:26 - False Christs  
 ..... Mt 24:24; Mk 13:22

d) TYPE OF FALSE GOSPELS

- Some preach
  - > another Jesus ..... 2Co 11:4; 2Jo 1:7
  - > another spirit ..... 2Co 11:4
  - > another gospel ..... 2Co 11:4; Ga 1:6-7; 2Ti 4:3-4
- Some teach a Christ-less gospel ..... 2Pe 2:1
  - > fables & genealogies ..... ITi 1:3-7; Heb 13:9
- human philosophy ..... Col 2:8; Mt 15:9; Mk 7:7 >
- material science ..... Col 2:8 - Some teach harsh treatment of the  
 body..... Col 2:16-17
  - > not eating some foods ..... Col 2:16-17,20-22
  - > mistreating the body ..... Col 2:23 -
- Sabbaths and special days ..... Col 2:16 -
- Marriage is forbidden ..... ITi 4:3
- Preaching for material gain..... 2Co 2:17;4:2
- Preached by ignorant people .....2Pe 3:16
- Worship of angels..... Col 2:18
- "Gospel" of law and religious works ..... Ga 3:1-5; Ac 15:24; ITi 4:3
- Special foods (water, oil, etc..) ..... Heb 13:9
- Idols ..... Ro 1:18-23; Zec 10:2
- People deified..... Ro 1:23; Ac 12:22; 14:11; 28:6
- Demons worshiped ..... De 32:17; Ps 106:37; Re 9:20; 13:4
- False Gods and Goddesses
  - > Baal..... Jdg 2:11-13
  - > Queen of heaven (Mother & Child) ..... Jer 44:17,25
  - > Tammuz (Child of Mother & Child) ..... Eze 8:14
  - > Many, many others..
- Heavens-sun, moon, stars ..... De 4:19; 2Ki 17:16; Eze 8:16

## 7. CHURCH GOVERNMENT

Overseers, elders and deacons are the three ministries appointed to see that the needs of the members of the local church are met.

a) GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS ..... IPe5:1-4 - Fear

God, TRUSTWORTHY, hate dishonest gain ..... Ex 18:21

- MULTITUDE OF COUNSELORS brings safety ..... Pr 11:14; 15:22; 24:6

- He who leads must be SERVANT of all..... Mk9:35; 10:42-45 - Must know the voice of God ..... ICh 14:10-17

b) OVERSEER (BISHOP) QUALIFICATIONS

- Family concerns

> must not have more than one wife ..... ITi 3:2

> must manage his family well ..... ITi 3:4

> his children must be obedient..... ITi 3:4 - Character

> not overbearing ..... Tit 1:7

> self-controlled ..... Tit 1:8; ITi 3:2 > not violent, but gentle..... Tit 1:7; ITi 3:3 > not quicktempered nor quarrelsome ..... Tit 1:7; ITi 3:3

> disciplined, moderate in habits ..... Tit 1:8; ITi 3:2 - Reputation

> good reputation with outsiders ..... ITi 3:7

> blameless, above any reproach ..... Tit 1:7; ITi 3:2

> not given to much wine ..... Tit 1:7; ITi 3:3

> careful with money ..... Tit 1:7; ITi 3:3

> hospitable ..... Tit 1:8; ITi3:2 > upright,

respectable ..... Tit 1:8; ITi3:2

- Ministry Abilities

> loves what is good ..... Tit 1:8

> holy ..... Tit 1:8

> must firmly believe the truth ..... Tit 1:9

> must not be a recent convert ..... ITi 3:6

> must be able to teach ..... Tit 1:9 ITi 3:2

c) ELDERS

- Term seems to refer to all the leadership of the local church

> apostles and elders in the Jerusalem church..... Ac 15:2,4,6,22

> Paul sends for elders of Ephesus

(presumably these are all of the leaders) ..... Ac 20:17

> Peter is an apostle and elder ..... IPe 5:1

> the saints, the overseers and deacons ..... Php 1:1

- Qualifications same as for overseer ..... Tit 1:6-9

> "overseer" and "elder" used interchangeably here

- Elders direct the affairs of the church ..... ITi5:17

- Elders are supported by the church ..... ITi 5:17

- > especially teachers
- Some of the elders teach and preach ..... ITi5:17
- The elders of the church pray for the sick ..... Jas5:14
- Appointed (Ordained)
  - > by the apostles..... Ac 14:23
  - > with prayer and fasting..... Ac 14:23
  - > in every church, in every town..... Ac 14:23; Tit 1:5 > Titus
- was to appoint elders ..... Tit 1:5

d) DEACONS (ATTENDANT, SERVANT)

- One of the categories of leadership ..... Php 1:1
- It is a very honorable position ..... ITi3:8-13
- Qualifications similar to overseers ..... ITi 3:8-12
- Possibly these are the original 7 deacons ..... Ac6:1-7

**8. CORRECTION & FORGIVENESS**

a) CHURCH DISCIPLINE

- Apostle Paul disciplines unrepentant sinners  
..... ICo 5:1-5; 2Co 12:19-21; 2Co 13:2; 2Co 13:10; ITi 1:20
- Warn a divisive person twice, then separate him..... Tit 3:10
  - > if he does not repent, separate him from the church
- Cause of leadership quarrel..... Mt 20:20-28
  - > strive for supreme position like unbelievers ..... Mk 10:42-45
  - > a true church leader is a servant..... Mk 9:35; 10:42-45 -
- Discipline of a church leader
  - > at least 2 witnesses are required ..... ITi 5:19
  - > if sin, rebuked publicly so others are warned ..... ITi 5:20
- 2 or more witnesses needed ..... Nu 35:30; Mt 18:16;  
2Co 13:1; ITi 5:19
- Careful not to be tempted by sin of those being helped.... Ga 6:1 Note:

The goal of all church discipline is never to condemn, but to restore. Therefore, discipline must be motivated by love toward the fallen, that his soul might be saved (ICo 5:5), and must not be so harsh as to cause excessive sorrow (2Co 2:5-11).

b) RULE OF LOVE

- Old Testament rule-eye for an eye (no excess) ..... Ex 21:24; De 19:21
- Love your enemies .....Mt 5:43-45; Lu 6:27;  
Ro 12:20; ITh 5:15
  - > pray for those who persecute you ..... Mt 5:44
  - > Examples: Jesus and Stephen ..... Lu 23:34; Ac 7:59-60
- Reaffirm our love for fallen brethren ..... 2Co 2:8
- The importance of rebuking sin in love ..... Re 3:19; Pr 27:5,6;  
Job 5:17,18

c) RULE OF FORGIVENESS

- Forgive in the same way as you want forgiveness ..... Mt 6:14; 18:22-35;

- Mk 11:25; Eph 4:32
- Rebuke and, if repentance, then forgive ..... Lu 17:3-4
  - Joseph forgives his brothers ..... Ge 45:15; 50:15-21
- d) RULE OF NO CONDEMNATION
- Don't condemn, you'll be condemned the same way..... Mt 7:1-5
    - > we are to discern between good and evil ..... Mt 7:15-20
  - Don't be judgmental ..... Ro 14:13; ICo 8:7-13
    - > rather, set no stumbling block for your brother
- c) PROPER PERSONAL RELATIONS OF GREAT IMPORTANCE
- First the natural, then the spiritual ..... ICo 15:46 - Before we minister to the Lord
    - > first our earthly relationships must be right..... Mt 5:23-26
    - > first our relationships, then prayer to God ..... Mk 11:25
  - Procedure for a brother who sins against you .....Mt 18:15-18
    - > Note: it doesn't say "annoys you" but "sins against you"
    - > go to him alone and try to win him
    - > if no resolution, take 1 or 2 others with you
    - > if no resolution, take him before the church
    - > if no resolution, he must be put outside the church
  - Forgive, forgive, forgive ..... Mt 18:21-22; Lu 17:4; Col 3:13
    - > be reconciled before night comes ..... Eph 4:26
  - Husband - wives, so prayers are not hindered ..... IPe 3:7 - A man of wisdom overlooks an offense ..... Pr 19:11
- f) REPROOF OR CORRECTION
- Word of God is our standard ..... 2Ti 4:2; Tit 2:13-15
  - He who listens to a wise rebuke is helped ..... Pr 25:12
  - He who is stiff-necked is destroyed ..... Pr29:1
  - Peter reproved by Jesus..... Mk 8:33
  - 11 rebuked for disbelieving His resurrection ..... Mk 16:14
  - The Lord rebukes His sons ..... Heb 12:5; Re 3:19
    - > proves that we are legitimate sons ..... Heb 12:5-8 > is good for us, producing holiness ..... Heb 12:10 > never pleasant but bears fruit of righteousness ..... Heb 12:11

## **9. GIFTED PEOPLE IN THE CHURCH UNIVERSAL**

..... **Eph 4:11-17**

### **a) PURPOSE OF THE 5-FOLD MINISTRY**

- To prepare God's people for service ..... Eph 4:12 - To unify the faith of God's people..... Eph 4:13 - To mature the people spiritually ..... Eph 4:13

- To protect against false doctrine ..... Eph 4:14 b) APOSTLE: Founder of local churches (more than an evangelist)
- Jesus first and greatest Apostle ..... Heb 3:1
- Apostles empowered to do miracles ..... Mt 10:1; Mk 16:20; Lu 9:1; Ac 2:43
- Were ordinary men ..... Ac 4:13; Mt 4:18
- Called by God, Jesus, Holy Spirit ..... ICo 1:1; Ac 20:24; 13:2,4
- The twelve were for Jewish Church, Israel..... Mt 10:5,6; 19:28; Lu 22:30
- Ascension Apostles for the Gentile Church ..... Eph 4:11,12
  - > Were foundational (supporting, not ruling) ..... Eph 2:20; Re 21:14
  - > Paul ..... ICo 9:1; 2Co 1:1
  - > Barnabas ..... Ac 14:14
  - > Andronicus ..... Ro 16:7
  - > Junias (a woman apostle) ..... Ro 16:7
  - > Silvanus ..... ITh 1:1; 2:6
  - > Timothy ..... ITh 1:1; 2:6
  - > Titus ..... 2Co 8:23
  - > James, the Lord's brother ..... Ga 1:19
  - > Others ..... ICo 9:5
- Authority to correct the Church ..... ICo 5:3-5; 2Th 3:6
- Apostles teach, preach, evangelize ..... Ac 2:42; ITi 2:7; 2Ti 1:11; Acts
  - > appointing local leadership ..... Ac 14:23
- Paul's life as an apostle ..... ICo 4:9-21; 2Co 11:21-12:13
- False apostles ..... 2Co 11:13-15
  - > see False Gospels ..... Section F6
- c) PROPHET (sec Prophesying)..... Section F10 - Jesus Christ Chief Prophet..... De 18:15; Ac 3:22
  - > example of Jesus' prophetic ministry ..... Mt 24:1-51; Mk 10:32-34
- Spoke by the influence of the Holy Spirit..... Lu 1:67; 2Pe 1:21
- Required to speak all of and only what God spoke ..... Eze 3:10; De 18:20 - Prophets and teachers in church at Antioch ..... Ac 13:1 - Prophets:
  - > Agabus, Anna ..... Ac 11:28; 21:10; Lu 2:36
  - > Judas and Silas ..... Ac 15:32
  - > Paul, Peter, John prophesy about false prophets ... ITi 4,1
- Others can prophesy as well
  - > Joel, your sons and daughters will prophesy ..... Joe 2:28
  - > Philip's Daughters ..... Ac 21:9
- False Prophets to increase at end times ..... Mt 24:11,24; 2Pe 2:1-2; Re (all)
  - > prophesy lies in Jesus' Name..... Jer 14:14
  - > see False Gospels ..... Section F6

Note: Not all who prophesy are prophets (ICo 14:31,32). The office of prophet carries with it the divine ability to know the future at times (e.g. Agabus) and to perceive what God is doing and thereby give direction to the Church (Ac 13:1). d) EVANGELIST - Proclaimer of the Gospel of Jesus

- Jesus as the great Evangelist ..... Mk 1:14; Lu 4:43
- Philip the evangelist led by the Holy Spirit ..... Ac 8:26-39; 21:8
- Philip the evangelist preached Jesus ..... Ac 8:35
- Paul exhorts Timothy to evangelism ..... 2Ti4:5 - Philip as an example
  - > one of the seven ..... Ac6:5 > preached in Samaria ..... Ac 8:5
  - > led of the Spirit (angel)..... Ac8:26 > preached to the Ethiopian..... Ac8:26-30 > first served faithfully as deacon ..... Ac 6:5 e) PASTOR (SHEPHERD) One who cares for the people
- "Shepherd" is used mainly in relation to Jesus ..... IPe 2:25; 5:1-4
  - > Jesus as Good Shepherd ..... Heb 13:20; Joh 10:11,14; IPe 2:25
  - > there shall be one fold and one Shepherd ..... Joh 10:16; Heb 13:20
- Shepherd contrasted with a hireling ..... Joh 10:12
- People need a shepherd ..... Mt 9:36; Mk 6:34
- The one and only reference to "pastor" in Epistles..... Eph 4:11
- God promises the Church pastors ..... Jer 3:15
- Pastor keeps flock together..... Eze 34:5
- Lead the flock primarily through example ..... IPe 5:3
- Are willing to lay down their lives for the sheep ..... Joh 10:11 - Are told to feed the flock of God (Church) ..... Ac 20:28 f) TEACHER - One who is gifted to teach the Word of God
- Jesus as teacher ..... Mt 4:23 - Prophets and teachers in church at Antioch .....Ac 13:1
- Not many should be teachers ..... Jas 3:1
- Paul taught in Antioch, Corinth, Rome..... Ac 11:26;15:35;18:11;28:31
- Apollos taught before the Holy Spirit .....Ac 18:25
  - > after he was better informed ..... Ac 18:26
- Elders must be able to teach..... Tit 1:9
- Requires STUDY to be able to teach well ..... 2Ti2:15
- False teachers, see False Gospels ..... SectionF6

## 10. SPIRITUAL GIFTS IN THE BODY OF CHRIST

### a) LIST OF SPIRITUAL ACTIVITIES WITHIN

- THE CHURCH BODY..... Ro 12:3-8
- All gifts are according to God's grace ..... Ro 12:6
  - All gifts should be ministered with love ..... ICo 13:1-13 -
    - Eagerly desire spiritual gifts ..... ICo 14:1

### b) PROPHESYING

- According to his faith ..... Ro 12:6
- Because the Lord has spoken ..... Am 3:8
- By the Holy Spirit..... Lu 1:67; 2Pe 1:21
- Seek especially to prophesy ..... ICo 14:1 - To edify, exhort, comfort..... ICo 14:3
- Serves the believer, not unbeliever..... ICo 14:22 - All may prophesy, one by one..... ICo 14:31 - Other judge the words of the prophets ..... ICo 14:29
- Tongues and interpretation equal prophecy ..... ICo 14:5
- Must not be forbidden ICo 14:39; ITh 5:20
- Someone should be available to interpret..... ICo 14:27 - See Prophet as a specially gifted person ..... Section P9 c) SERVING
- ..... Ro 12:7 - Distribution of food
- ..... Ac 6:1-7
- Dorcas with sewing ..... Ac 9:39
- Good service is rewarded by God ..... Mt 25:19-23,34-36
- > bad service is punished ..... Mt 25:24-30,41-46
- Jesus as our example ..... Mt 20:28; Php 2:7
- > Jesus washes the disciples' feet ..... Joh 13:1-17
- Should serve as unto the Lord, not unto men ..... Eph 6:5-7; Col 3:22-23 d)
- TEACHING..... Ro 12:7 - See Teacher as a specially gifted person ..... Section F9
- See qualifications of Elders, Overseers ..... Section F7
- A mature Christian ought to begin to teach ..... Heb 5:12-14
- Older women should teach the younger ones ..... Tit 2:3-5
- Parents are told to teach their children ..... De 6:7; Pr 4:1-9; Eph 6:4 - Teaching commanded in the Great Commission ..... Mt 28:20 c) ENCOURAGING
- ..... Ro 12:8 - Barnabas called Son of Encouragement..... Ac 4:36-37
- Moses as encourager ..... Ex 14:13-14
- Jesus encourages Paul in prison ..... Ac 23:11
- Lord's coming encourages us regarding death ..... ITh 4:13-18 - We should encourage one another daily ..... Heb 3:12,13 f) GIVING
- With generosity ..... Ro 12:8
- See Giving - Tithes and Offerings ..... Section G8
- Barnabas sold a field and gave to the church..... Ac 4:34-37 - False giving - Ananias & Sapphira ..... Ac 5:1-11
- g) LEADERSHIP
- With diligence ..... Ro 12:8
- Fear God, hate covetousness, love the truth ..... Ex 18:21
- Leader is the servant of all ..... Mt 20:26
- See Government for overall church leadership ..... Section F7

- Sec Church Government ..... Section F7 - See also False Teachers  
..... Section F6

**h) MERCY (COMFORT)**

- Cheerfully..... Ro 12:8
- To those in distress ..... Lu 10:37
- To the poor..... Pr 14:31
- To the backslider ..... Lu 15:18-20; 2Co 2:6-8
- Comfort others with the comfort we've received..... 2Co 13-7
- Mercy and truth are associated ..... Ps 25:10; 85:8-10
- Mercy and true judgment are associated ..... Zec 7:9; Mt 23:23
- Mercy rejoices over judgment ..... Jas 2:13 - Mercy and forgiveness are associated
  - > God's mercy and forgiveness to those who love Him..  
..... Ex 34:7; Nu 14:18; Ps 86:5; Da 9:9
  - > God shows us mercy in the same way we show others mercy..  
..... Mt 6:12-15; Mk 11:25-26; Lu 6:37-38; 11:4; Eph 4:32; Col 3:13
  - > to be generous in forgiving others ..... Mt 18:21; Lu 17:3-4
  - > Gospel is a message of mercy and forgiveness ..... Ac 13:38; 26:18

**11. SPIRITUAL GIFTS IN CHURCH MEETINGS**

**a) 1 Co 12:1-26**

Description of various SPIRITUAL GIFTS that function when the church body MEETS, in order to allow God to minister to the needs of people attending the meeting. **b)**

**INTRODUCTION**

- Pagans are led by dumb idols..... ICo 12:2
- The Spirit of God gives us discernment ..... ICo 12:1-3
  - > the Spirit of God never curses Jesus ..... ICo 12:3 > the Spirit of God affirms Jesus is Lord ..... ICo 12:3
- One Spirit, one Lord, one God ..... ICo 12:4-6
- Spiritual gifts are to benefit of the Church..... ICo 12:7,25-26
- Each person has some Spiritual gifting..... ICo 12:7
- The Church is a unit ..... ICo 12:12 - In many ways we are all alike
  - > all baptized by one Spirit (Holy Spirit) ..... ICo 12:13
  - > all belong to one Body (Church of Jesus) ..... ICo 12:13
- We have different functions ..... ICo 12:14-26
  - > differences are necessary ..... ICo 12:19-20
  - > we all depend on each other ..... ICo 12:21-26 > they must all work together for unity ..... ICo 12:25 c)

**DIFFERENT**

**SPIRITUAL GIFTS -**

**d) THREE SPEAKING GIFTS**

- Ability to speak in tongues ..... 1Co12:10
    - > Pentecost ..... Ac 2:4
    - > Gentile believers, Cornelius..... Ac 10:46
      - > We note three types of this gift:  
tongues as a sign to unbelievers..... ICo 14:22; Ac 2:4ff tongues  
as personal prayer language ..... ICo 14:18 tongues spoken  
publicly (and interpreted) in church..... ICo 14:19
  - Ability to interpret these tongues..... ICo 12:10 > see under  
Prophecy..... see below
  - Prophecy ..... ICo 12:10
    - > seek especially to prophesy ..... ICo 14:1-5
    - > see Prophesying..... Section F10
    - > is imperfect until Christ comes ..... ICo 13:9 >
  - should be judged ..... ICo 14:29 >
  - upbuilds, encourages and consoles ..... ICo 14:3 c) THREE
- KNOWING (revelation) GIFTS
- Word of Knowledge ..... ICo 12:8
    - > Supernatural knowledge of information
    - > Jesus has unexpected knowledge ..... Joh 1:47-50; 4:17-18
    - > Peter has unexpected knowledge ..... Ac 5:3; 8:23
  - Word of Wisdom ..... ICo 12A
    - > Supernatural wisdom for a situation
    - > Jesus uses supernatural wisdom ..... Mt 21:25-27; 22:17-22
  - Ability to distinguish spirits ..... 1Co12:10 > Paul and the slave  
girl..... Ac 16:16-18
- f) THREE POWER (action) GIFTS
- Faith..... ICo 12:9
    - > Believing God for the impossible
    - > Jesus and-the fig tree ..... Mt 21:19-22

- > Paul and shipwreck ..... Ac 27:21-26 Gifts
- of healing ..... ICo 12:9
  - > imparting God's healing to the sick
  - > Jesus, see Healings ..... Section B9,12
  - > Peter & John ..... Ac 3:6-10
- Power to do miracles ..... ICo 12:10 >
- see miracles of Jesus ..... Section B9 > see
- miracles of Apostles ..... Section P9

## 12. SPIRITUAL GROWTH

### a) GOAL IS SPIRITUAL MATURITY

- Rooted and established with Christ in our hearts ..... Eph 3:17-19
- Path of the righteous grows brighter and brighter ..... Pr 4:18 - To be able to distinguish between good and evil ..... Heb 5:14

### b) EXHORTATION TO MATURITY

- Stop being like children ..... ICo 14:20
- Grow up in your salvation ..... IPe 2:2
- By now you ought to be teachers ..... Heb 5:12 - Jealousy & quarreling says you are still infants ..... ICo 3:1-4

### c) THINGS THAT MAKE US GO BACKWARDS

- No leadership - Moses on the mountain..... Ex 32:1-8
- Bad company-Solomon's wives ..... lKi 11,4
  - > bad company corrupts good morals ..... ICo 15:33
- Worldly success-Amaziah ..... 2Ch 25:2-14
- Actions of Satan ..... Lu 8:12
- Trials of life ..... Lu 8:13
- Love of the world - Demas ..... Lu 8:14; 2Ti 4:10

### d) GROWTH DEPENDS ON OUR OBEDIENCE TO GOD

- Jesus learned obedience by what He suffered ..... Heb 5:8-10
- Jesus did only what He saw the Father doing ..... Joh 5:19
- Obedience to God leads to righteousness ..... Ro 6:16
- Obedience to God leads to holiness ..... IPe 1:14-16
- Obedient thought-life is spiritual victory ..... 2Co 10:4-5 - Our obedience leads us to the good of the land ..... Isa 1:19

### e) AREAS OF SPIRITUAL GROWTH AND GUIDANCE

- Through the Bible-Word of God to us
  - > hearing the Word of God brings spiritual blessing..... Re 1:3
  - > reading the Word of God brings spiritual blessing..... Re 1:3
  - > learn the Word of God to avoid sin ..... Ps 119:9-11
  - > meditate on the Word of God to gain wisdom ..... Jos 1:8; Ps 119:99 -

### Prayer-Talking with God

- > worship God for Who He is ..... Ps 29:2

- > confess our weakness and sins ..... IJo 1:9
- > thank Him for help in the past ..... Eph 5:20; ITh 5:18
- > make our requests known to Him ..... Php 4:6
- Fellowship - the Church helps us
  - > we help each other (sharpen each other) ..... Pr 27:17
  - > Jesus gathers with those gathered in His Name ..... Mt 18:20
  - > don't neglect fellowship, especially near the end .. Heb 10:24-25
  - > Church ministries given for our help ..... Eph 4:11-14 -
- Ministry - we help others
  - > we help others as we've been helped ..... De 16:17; 2Co 1:4
  - > physical helps show God's love through us ..... Jas 2:15-17
  - > testifying helps us understand God's goodness .... Phm 1:6
  - > testifying helps us be overcomers ..... Re 12:11
  - > we are to preach the gospel to all nations ..... Mt 24:14; Mk 16:15 f)

#### CONDITIONS FOR BEARING SPIRITUAL FRUIT

- See Fruit of the Spirit ..... Section G1
- We must dwell with Christ and Christ in us ..... Joh 15:5
- Die to the old nature to be spiritually alive ..... Joh 12:24
- Must have understanding of the Word we hear..... Mt 13:23

### **G. GROWING IN CHRIST**

#### **TABLE OF CONTENTS - THIS SECTION**

#### **G1. FRUIT OF THE SPIRIT**

#### **G2. WATER BAPTISM**

#### **G3. LORD'S SUPPER - COMMUNION - BREAKING OF BREAD**

#### **G4. WORSHIP AND PRAISE                      G5.**

#### **FALSE WORSHIP**

#### **G6. PRAYER**

#### **G7. FASTING**

#### **G8. GIVING - TITHES AND OFFERINGS**

#### **G9. MARRIAGE AND THE FAMILY**

### **1. FRUIT OF THE SPIRIT**

a) LOVE ..... Ga5:22 - GOD IS

LOVE ..... IJo4:8

- God showed His love by sending Jesus. .... IJo4:9
- He who has been forgiven much loves much ..... Lu 7:42
- Wonderful reward for those who love God ..... ICo 2:9; Ro 8:28
- Passage about the character of love..... ICo 13:1-13
- Love of God and love of neighbor is primary ..... Lu 10:27- De 6:5;  
Ro 13:8-10; Ga 5:14; Jas 2:8; IJo 4:20-21

> we are to love even our enemies ..... Mt 5:44-46; Lu 6:27-35



- > thanksgiving ..... Isa 51:3
- > righteousness..... Pr 29:2,6; 28:12
- > labor..... Ec 3:22; 5:19
- > health ..... Isa 66:14
- > love relationship with spouse..... Ca 1:4; Ec 9:9; Pr 5:18

DO NOT COPY

- Joy not taken away from us problems ..... Ps 51:8;126:5; Isa 51:11 c) PEACE  
 ..... Ga 5:22
- God is the God of' peace ..... 1Th 5:23; 2Th3:16  
 Heb 13:20
- > God is not author of confusion..... ICo14:33
- Gospel is gospel of peace..... Ac 10:36; Ro 10:15;  
 Eph 2:14; 6:15
- > salvation brings peace with God ..... Ro 5:1
- Wisdom from heaven is peace-loving ..... Jas 3:17
- Peace increases with our understanding of God ..... 2Pe 1:2
- Peacemakers will be called children of God ..... Mt 5:9
- A spiritually minded believer is at peace ..... Ro 8.6
- Peace of God passes understanding ..... Joh 14:27; Php 4:7   > peace in  
 middle of tribulation ..... Joh 16:33   > peace is to rule our hearts  
 ..... Col 3:15
- Kingdom of God is righteousness, peace and joy ..... Ro 14:17
- Spiritual peace comes from Jesus ..... Joh 14:27
- > in spite of tribulation ..... Joh 16:33 -
- We are kept in peace if concentrate on Jesus ..... Isa 26:3
- Believers are to follow peace..... 2Co 13:11  
 Eph 4:3; 1Pe 3:11
- > with all men ..... Ro 12:18; 14:19;  
 Heb 12:14; 1Th 5:13 d) PATIENCE
- ..... Ga5:22 - God is a God of patience  
 ..... Ro 15:5
- Job as an example of patience ..... Jas 5:11
- Paul's character shows patience ..... 2Ti 3:10
- Church leaders must be patient..... ITi 3:3; 6.11, 2Ti 2:24
- Older men should be patient ..... Tit2:2
- Patience is better than pride ..... Ec 7:8
- Need patience in midst of troubles ..... Ro 12:12
- > tribulation produces patience ..... Ro 5:3; 12:12; Jas 1:3 -
- Need to wait patiently for the Lord's return ..... Jas 5:7-8
- > patiently continue to do good ..... Ro 2:7;15:4; Heb 12:1
- Need patience to be mature in the Spirit ..... Jas 1:4; Lu 8:15
- Need patience to inherit the promise ..... Heb 10:16,36
- Ephesus, Thyatira & Philadelphia show patience ..... Re 2:2-3; 19; 3:10
- At end times, great patience needed ..... Re 1:9; 13:10;14:12 - In patience we  
 possess our soul ..... Lu21:19   e)
- KINDNESS  
 ..... Ga5:22
- God is a God of kindness ..... 2Co 10:1; Tit 3:4; Joh 4:3-26;

- Joe 2:13
- > His kindness is everlasting ..... Isa 54:8
- God's wisdom is kind.....Jas 3:17
- Love is kind..... 1Co 13:4
- All believers should be kind ..... Col 3:12
- Kindness linked with forgiving one another ..... Eph 4:32
- Character of leader in the Church ..... 2Ti 2:24; Tit 3:2
- Character of Paul..... 2Co 6:6; 1Th 2:7
- Character of a good woman ..... Pr 31:26
- f) GOODNESS..... Ga5:22; Eph 5:9
- Major characteristic of God ..... Ex 33:19; 34:6; Ps 107:8;
- 144:2 > the Lord is good,
- take refuge in Him ..... Ps 34:8
- > we see His goodness now in this life ..... Ps 27:13
- > we will see His goodness in the future ..... Ps 31:19
- > see the Goodness of God ..... Section B5
- We should repay evil with good ..... Lu 6:27; Ro 12:20-21
- God's goodness leads us to repentance..... Ro 2:4
- Believers should rejoice in goodness ..... 2Ch 6:41 > satisfied with goodness
- of God's house ..... Ps 65:4 > we should be full of goodness
- ..... Ro 15:14 g) FAITHFULNESS .....
- Ga5:22
- God is a faithful God ..... De 7:9; Ps 36:5; 1Co 1:9,
- 1Pe 4:19; Re 19:11
- > if we are faithless, He remains faithful ..... 2Ti 2:13 -
- Faithful servants of God
- > Abraham ..... Ga 3:9
- > Moses ..... Nu 12:7; Heb 3:5
- > Daniel ..... Da 6:4
- > Paul..... 1Ti 1:12 - Faithful person
- > reverences God ..... Ne 7:2
- > keeps a confidence ..... Pr 11:13
- > does not lie..... Pr 14:5
- > is rare to find ..... Pr 20:6
- Faithfulness in small things brings big reward ..... Lu 19:17
- Faithfulness to God even to death brings life ..... Re 2:10
- God is looking for faithful stewards..... 1Co 4:2
- > character of leaders ..... 1Ti 3:11; 2Ti 2:2; Tit 1:6,9
- > they will be rewarded ..... Mt 24:45; 25:21,23; Lu 12:42
- > faithful in little, then much ..... Lu 16:10; 19:17
- > faithful in natural, then spiritual things ..... Lu 16:11 >
- faithful with another's things, then your own ..... Lu 16:12

- h) GENTLENESS (MEEKNESS) ..... Ga 5:23; Eph 4:2; Col 3:12
- Jesus is meek..... Mt 11:29; 21:5; 2Co 10:1
  - Wisdom from above is gentle ..... Jas 3:17
  - Paul is meek ..... 1Co 4:21
  - Moses is meek..... Nu 12:3
  - Characteristic of a leader in the Church ..... 1Ti 3:3;6:11;2Ti 2:25; Tit 3:2
    - > sign of a spiritual person ..... Jas 3:13; 1Pe 3:4,15
  - Apostles were gentle among the people ..... 1Th 2:7
  - We should receive the Word of God meekly ..... Jas 1:21
  - We should counsel sinners meekly..... Ga 6:1
- Blessing to the meek
- > shall be satisfied ..... Ps 22:26
  - > shall be guided by God ..... Ps25:9
  - > shall inherit the earth..... Ps 37:11; Mt 5:5
  - > shall be saved by God..... Ps 76:9; 149:4
  - > shall be exalted by God ..... Ps 147:6
  - > shall increase their joy in God ..... Isa 29:19
  - > shall hear the gospel..... Isa 61:1
  - > shall be hidden in day of judgment..... Zep 2:3 i)
- SELFCONTROL (TEMPERANCE) ..... Ga5:23 - Better a man with self-control than a warrior ..... Pr 16:32
- Paul preached righteousness, self-control and judgment... Ac 24:25
  - Control of the tongue a great challenge ..... Jas3:2
  - Control of the lusts of the flesh ..... Ro 6:12-13 - We should add selfcontrol to our faith ..... 2Pe 1:5,6
- j) OTHER PASSAGES REGARDING SPIRITUAL GROWTH
- 2Pe 1:5-7..... + faith + goodness + knowledge + self-control + perseverance + godliness + kindness + love - Ro 14:17..... Kingdom of God is righteousness, peace and joy. - Heb 6:12... repentance, faith, baptisms, laying on of hands, resurrection of the dead, eternal judgment
  - 1Ti 6:11..... righteousness, godliness, faith, love, patience, meekness

## 2. WATER BAPTISM

Water baptism is the ceremony that celebrates the entrance of a believer into the community of the Church. Its significance is substantial but not sufficient in itself to save a person. To be saved requires God's grace, our faith in Jesus' death and resurrection, and a continued walk of obedience to God. Water baptism is likened unto circumcision whereby we proclaim our identification with a group of people, the Church of God.

### a) OLD TESTAMENT TYPES

- Ark in the Hood ..... 1Pe3:20-21
  - > Note: The RESURRECTION OF JESUS CHRIST saves us, not water baptism.

- Circumcision ..... Col 2:11-12
  - > Note: It is FAITH IN GOD that saves us, not water baptism.
  - > The cloud and Red Sea ..... 1Co 10:2

**b) JOHN THE BAPTISTS FORM OF BAPTISM**

- Announced the Holy Spirit baptism by Jesus ..... Mt 3:11; Mk 1:8; Lu 3:16 Announced salvation and God's wrath to come ..... Mt 3:12; Lu 3:17

DO NOT COPY

- Prepared people to accept Jesus ..... Lu 7:29-30, Joh 1:23  
People confessed their sins ..... Mt 3:6; Mk 1:5  
Repentance for the forgiveness of sins ..... Ac 13:24; Mk 1:4; Lu 3:3 -  
Comparison John's and Christian baptism..... Ac 18:25; 19:4-7
- c) JESUS IS BAPTIZED BY JOHN
- To fulfill all righteousness ..... Mt 3:15
  - Spirit of God descended on Jesus ..... Mt 3:16; Mk 1:10; Lu 3:22
  - God affirms Jesus as His Beloved Son ..... Mt 3:17, Mk 1:11; Lu 3:22 - Is followed by Jesus' temptation ..... Mt 4:1; Mk 1:12; Lu 4:1
- d) SIGNIFICANCE OF CHRISTIAN WATER-BAPTISM
- Baptized into Jesus and His death ..... Ro 6:3
  - Buried with Him and risen with Him ..... Col 2:12
  - By one Spirit into one Body ..... 1Co 12:13
  - Clothed with Christ..... Ga 3:27 - Good conscience towards God ..... 1Pe 3:21
- e) TEACHING PASSAGE ..... Ro 6:1-14 - Our salvation is by God's grace ..... Ro 6:1
- God's free gift leads us to say "no" to sin ..... Ro 6:2,12
  - In baptism we identify with Christ Jesus
    - > His death (crucified) ..... Ro 6:3,6
    - > His burial ..... Ro 6:4
    - > His resurrection..... Ro 6:4-5
    - > His new life ..... Ro 6:4,8,11
    - > His freedom from sin ..... Ro 6:6,7,11-23
    - > His obedience to God..... Ro 6:10 - A change of masters: from sin to God ..... Ro 6:11-14
- f) EXAMPLES
- The believers after Pentecost ..... Ac 2:41
  - Converts in Samaria ..... Ac 8:12
  - The Ethiopian Eunuch Ac 8:38
  - Saul (Paul) after his conversion ..... Ac 9:18
  - Lydia, seller of purple cloth ..... Ac 16:15
  - Philippian Jailer and his household ..... Ac 16:33
  - Believers in Corinth ..... Ac 18:8 - Disciples in Ephesus ..... Ac 19:5
- g) WHO SHOULD BE BAPTIZED?
- Only believers are to receive Christian Baptism
    - > believing (Faith) comes before baptism ..... Mk 16:16; Ac 2:41; 18:8
    - > repentance comes before baptism ..... Ac 2:38
    - > preach, believe, baptized, saved ..... Mk 16:16
    - > repent, baptized, forgiven. Holy Spirit ..... Ac 2:38
    - > preach. Holy Spirit, baptism ..... Ac 10:44-48

- Infants seem to have a special place in God's view
  - > Note: The order is always believe and then be baptized.
  - > Note: Baptizing infants is not mentioned in the Scriptures.
  - > their angels in heaven always see the face of My Father..... Mt 18:10
- > young children are sanctified by a believing parent 1Co 7:14
  - > rather young children should be dedicated to the Lord and blessed..... Ex 13:2; Mk 10:16
  - > When they come to an age of accountability (know to choose good and refrain from evil) they can believe and be baptized..... Isa 7:15,16
- h) WHEN ARE THEY BAPTIZED?
  - Repent and be baptized ..... Ac 2:38
  - Those who accepted his message were baptized ..... Ac 2:41
  - When they believed, they were baptized ..... Ac 8:12
    - > both men and women
  - Ethiopian was baptized as soon as he believed ..... Ac 8:36-38
  - Cornelius ordered to be baptized ..... Ac 10:47-48
    - > as soon as the Holy Spirit came upon them
  - Philippian jailer was baptized immediately ..... Ac 16:31-34
    - > and all his family
  - Bible does not mention any delay before baptizing a Believer. i) HOW ARE THEY BAPTIZED? - Commanded by Jesus
    - > in the Name of Father, Son & Holy Spirit ..... Mt 28:19
  - As practiced by the Apostles
    - > in the Name of Jesus Christ ..... Ac 2:38; 10:48
    - > into the Name of the Lord Jesus ..... Ac 8:16; 19:5 > baptized into Christ Jesus ..... Ro 6:3; Ga 3:27
  - Form of baptism is determined by being BURIED..... Ro 6:4
    - > Jesus came out of the water ..... Mk 1:10
    - > Because there was much water there ..... Joh 3:23; Ac 8:36-39 >
- Note: Baptism as practiced in Bible times was by total immersion of the believer. This fulfills the analogy of burial.
- j) OTHER CONCERNS
  - Baptism in water and in the Holy Spirit are different > water baptism is not the same as being baptized in the Holy Spirit..... Ac 8:16
  - Comparison John's and Christian baptism..... Ac 18:25; 19:4-7

### 3. LORD'S SUPPER-COMMUNION-BREAKING OF BREAD

Just as Baptism is the initiation of the person into the Church, the Lord's Supper is the continuation of that identity with the Church by the believer. It is the primary way we are reminded of God's commitment to, and covenant with His people, through Christ.

**a) FORESHADOWING**

- Melchizedek ..... Ge 14:18-20
  - > bread and wine identified him as priest..... Ge 14:18
  - > Abram tithed to him before Mosaic law ..... Ge 14:20
  - > Melchizedek foreshadows Jesus' priesthood ..... Ps 110:4; Heb 5:6; 6:20
  - > More detail as to priesthood of Melchizedek ..... Heb 7:1-28
- Original Passover Feast ..... Ex 12:17-30
  - > see Blood of Jesus ..... Section E1
- Ruth had bread and wine with Boaz ..... Ru 2:14 - The table of shewbread in the tabernacle ..... Le 24:5-9

**b) BEGINNINGS IN NEW TESTAMENT TIMES**

- Was Jesus' eager desire ..... Lu 22:15
  - > As part of the Passover Feast ..... Mt 26:17-30; Mk 14:12-26; Lu 22:7-23
  - > As revealed to Paul by Jesus ..... 1Co 11:23-34
  - > Jesus taught it as a means of identifying with Him ..... Joh 6:53,54

**c) PRACTICED IN THE EARLY CHURCH**

- As part of a church meal ..... 1Co 11:17-34
- As part of the fellowship of believers ..... Ac 2:42 - As part of the Sunday (1st day) meeting ..... Ac 20:7,11

**d) WHAT IS DONE?**

- Originally as part of Passover Feast ..... Mt 26:17-30
- Corinthian church kept it as part of a meal ..... 1Co 11:17-34
- Paul practiced it as part of a Sunday meeting ..... Ac 20:7,11
- The bread represents the body of Christ ..... 1Co 11:24
- The wine represents the blood of Christ ..... 1Co 11:25 - We wait upon each other and partake together ..... 1Co 11:20-21

**c) WHO IS TO PARTAKE OF THE LORD'S SUPPER**

- It is meant for believers, not unbelievers ..... 1Co 10:21
- Self-examination is required ..... 1Co 11:28
- Unbelievers who partake of Lord's table and idols' food will be judged by God ..... 1Co 10:18-22; 11:27-32

**f) SYMBOLIC MEANING OF LORD'S SUPPER**

- Communion is a type of the heavenly wedding feast..... Re 19:9
- It is a looking back and a looking forward
  - > proclaiming His victory on the cross ..... 1Co 11:26
  - > proclaiming His victory at His return ..... 1Co 11:26
- Jesus spoke symbolically before the Lord's Supper

- > I am the vine, you are the branches ..... Joh 15:5
- > I am the bread of life ..... Joh 6:48
- Now He says
- this bread represents My body..... Mk 14:22
- > this wine represents My blood ..... Mk 14:24

DO NOT COPY

- Note: Some people make a **SERIOUS ERROR** when they say that the bread and wine are the real body and blood of Jesus. They say communion is the re-sacrificing of Jesus again. This is a serious error.
  - > crucifying Jesus again is seen as having fallen away from the faith completely ..... Heb 6:6
  - > wicked hands crucified our Lord ..... Ac2:23
- > princes of this world crucified Jesus ..... ICo 2:8
  - > Satan is the Prince and power of the world ..... Joh 12:31; Eph 2:2
  - > crucifixion was a betrayal..... Mt26:2
  - > Jesus was sacrificed once, for ever, for all ..... Heb 9:26; 10:10,12
  - > there is no more sacrifice for sins ..... Heb 10:26
- Bread and wine are not the real body and blood of Jesus; they represent, typify the reality.
  - > Jesus and the bread and wine are together ..... Mt 26:17-30 > He is not giving His body, but symbols of it.
  - > Jesus says He will eat of it again in the Kingdom of God ..... Lu 22:16
  - > He cannot mean He will eat Himself.
  - > Resurrected Jesus breaks real bread (not His body)..... Lu 24:30
  - > Surely this indicates it is **NOT LITERALLY** His body and blood.
- Jesus promises to be with us always ..... Mt 28:20; Mt 18:20 - Jesus claims to be in US (not the bread and wine) ..... Joh 15:4-7

#### **4. WORSHIP AND PRAISE**

WORSHIP has to do with our attitude and actions of honour, love and respect toward the One we reverence and fear, our Ruler. PRAISE has to do with proclaiming (usually by our words and songs) the glory and goodness of the One we worship. Ps 51:15

##### **a) WHO SHOULD BE PRAISED AND WORSHIPED?**

- Worship God ..... Ex 34:14; Mt 4:10; Lu 4:8 Re 22:9; IPe 4:11
  - > Commandment ..... Ex 20:3; Mt 22:3637
- Angels worship Jesus .....Heb 1:6 > see Deity of Jesus ..... Section B8

##### **b) WHO SHOULD WORSHIP GOD?**

- All of His creation should praise Him..... Ps 148:1-4
- All His angels and the heavenly host ..... Ps 148:2
- All who trust in Jesus ..... Eph 1:12; Ps 22:23
- 24 Elders worship before the throne ..... Re4:10-11
- Magi wish to worship Jesus..... Mt 2:2
- All the earth should praise Him ..... Ps 148:7-13
  - > rulers of the earth ..... Ps 148:11
  - > men and women ..... Ps 148:12

- > young children ..... Ps148:12;Mt21:15-16;Ps 8:2
- > those who have been martyred ..... Re 6:9-11 - Eventually everyone will ..... Php2:9-11

c) WHY SHOULD GOD BE PRAISED AND WORSHIPED?

- Believers were CHOSEN to show His praises ..... IPe 2:9
- Praise glorifies God ..... Ps 50:23
- Because it is commanded ..... Ps67:3-5;Re 19:5
- For His mercy ..... Ro 15:9
- For our own benefit
  - > God inhabits the praises of Israel ..... Ps 22:3
  - > it is pleasant for us to praise Him ..... Ps 147:1
  - > praise is appropriate for the upright..... Ps 33:1
- Because of Who the Lord God is
  - > He is the great King over all the earth ..... Ps 47:1-9
  - > because of His surpassing greatness ..... Ps 150:2
  - > as Creator of everything ..... Ps 148:5; Ne 9:5-6
  - > His Name is exalted ..... Ps 48:10; 148:13; Ne 9:5
  - > He is our Protector..... Ps 144:2
- Because of His acts of power ..... Ps 150:2; Lu 19:37
  - > for His healing ..... Ps 147:3; 146:8; Section 12
  - > for His provision of food ..... Ps 147:8-9
  - > for His help for the weak ..... Ps 146:7-9
- To please Him ..... Ps 149:3-4
- As spiritual battle (defeat the enemies of God) ..... Ps 149:6-9; 2Ch 20:22-24

d) HOW SHOULD PRAISE AND WORSHIP BE OFFERED?

- Deeds (fruits) of righteousness are praise ..... Php 1:11
- Giving of offerings ..... Le 19:24
- Not "where" but "how" (spirit and truth) ..... Joh 4:23-24
  - > in spirit, no confidence in the flesh ..... Php 3:3
- Worship in the beauty of holiness ..... ICh 16:29; Ps 29:2; 96:9
- By our righteous lifestyle ..... Php 1:11
- By speaking of Him ..... Ps 145:11-13,21; IPe 4:11; Heb 13:15
- By our ministry in service to God ..... IPe 4:11; Col 3:17
- In unity with brethren Ps 133; Ro 15:5-7
  - > without anger in our heart ..... ITi 2:8
  - > without unforgiveness ..... Mt 5:21-26 - With
  - > thanksgiving..... Heb 13:15
  - > gladness ..... Ps 9:2
  - > understanding ..... ICo 14:15
  - > upright heart ..... Ps 119:7
  - > all our heart..... Ps 9:1; 138:1

- > bowing down ..... Ps 138:2; Ge 24:52
- > bowing of the head ..... Ge 24:26
- > kneeling ..... Ps 95:6
- > standing ..... 2Ch 20:18-19
  - > lifted hands ..... Ps134:2;141:2;Ne8:6;ITi2:8
- > hand clapping ..... Ps 47:1
- > shouts of joy..... Ps 47: 1;Lu 19:37
- > musical instruments ..... Ps 149:3; 150:3-6; Re 14:2
- > singing ..... Ps 47:6; Heb 2:12; Col 3:16; Eph 5:18-19
- > new song ..... Ps 144:9
- > special singers and musicians ..... ICh 23:5; 2Ch 20:21-22
- > dancing..... Ps 149:3; Ex 15:20; 2Sa 6:14

**5. FALSE WORSHIP**

It is best to learn and practice true worship, as explained in the Bible. However, because there is so much false worship in the world, a few, obvious forms of false worship are mentioned here.

See also False Gospels..... Section F6

**a) GOD DOES NOT TOLERATE FALSE WORSHIP**

- Forbidden..... Ex 20:4; De 4:16-19; 8:19; Isa 42:8
  - Excludes from heaven ..... ICo 6:9,10; Eph 5:5; Re 22:15
  - Eternally punished ..... Re 14:9-11;21:8
  - Keep far from a false matter ..... Ex 23:7; Ps 119:104,128
- b) IDOL WORSHIP (Sacrificing, Bowing Down, Praying ..... to an Idol) - Idol worship is**
- > forbidden..... Ex 20:4; Isa 42:8; IJo 5:21
  - > not permissible to mix idol-worship with true worship of God..... Ex 32:1-6; IKi 12:27-30; Ps 106:19-20
  - > punished ..... Ex 32:7-10
  - > worshiping God with images is sin ..... Ex 32:4-6 & Ps 106:19-20 - Idols are worthless
    - > cannot save ..... Isa 45:20
    - > idols are not to be feared ..... Jer 10:1-5
    - > degenerate man worships idols ..... Ac 7:42-43; Ro 1:22-23
    - > idols can't see or hear ..... De 4:28; Ps 115:4-7
    - > liable to corruption ..... Isa 40:20
    - > made by human skill ..... Isa 44:10-20; Ps 115:4

**c) WORSHIP OF SUN, MOON, STARS..**

- Forbidden ..... De 4:15-19; Jer 10:2; Ac 7:42-43

**d) WORLDLY AND SATANIC WORSHIP**

- Empty religious activity
    - > worthless, only the commands of men ..... Mt 15:8-9; Mk 7:6-7 - Satan and demons
      - > angels not to be worshiped..... Re 19:10; 22:8-9
      - > Satan desired Jesus' worship ..... Mt 4:8-9; Lu 4:6-7
        - > Demons are worshiped..... De 32:17; Ps 106:37; ICo 10:20; Re 9:20
  - Endtime false worship of beast and image
    - > wrath of God on all who worship these ..... Re 14:9-11
    - > plagues of God to teach men not to worship devils ..... Re 9:20
    - > Beast is worshiped by non-believers ..... Re 13:4-8
    - > Second beast causes people to worship the first .... Re 13:12
    - > Second beast causes people to worship the image. Re 13:15 e) FORMS OF FALSE WORSHIP
  - Sacrifices ..... Nu22:40; 2Ki 10:23-24
  - With libations ..... Isa 57:6; Jer 19:13
  - With incense ..... Jer 48:35; Eze 6:13 - With prayers and singing..... Ex 32:18-19; IKi 18:26 - By cutting themselves ..... IKi 18:28
  - By burning children ..... De 12:31; 2Ch 33:6; Jer 19:4-5; Eze 16:21
  - With sexual impurity ..... Nu 25:1-3; 2Ki 17:9; Isa 57:6-9; IPe 4:3
  - By carrying idols ..... Isa 46:7; Am 5:26; Ac 7:43
  - By bowing to idols ..... IKi 19:18; 2Ki 5:18 - By kissing idols ..... IKi 19:18; Ho 13:2
- f) MEANINGLESS WORSHIP
- That which is based only on tradition ..... Mt 15:1-9; Col 2:22
  - That which only has form but no power ..... 2Ti3:5
  - That which is unaccompanied by good deeds ..... Jas 1:26,27; Am 5:21-24
  - That which is based on externals ..... Heb 10:1,2
  - The vain worship of legalism ..... Col2:16-23 - Worship performed by those who are unclean..... Ps 24:3,4

## 6. PRAYER

### a) INTRODUCTION

Prayer is communicating with God.

- In the Garden of Eden, God and man simply talked..... Ge 3:8-13
- Now we pray and petition with thanksgiving ..... Php4:6-7 - First mention of prayer (calling on His Name) ..... Ge 4:26

### b) HOW SHOULD WE PRAY?

- To God ..... Ac 12:5

- In the Name of Jesus
  - >ask in My Name ..... Joh 14:13-14
  - > the Father will give whatever you ask in My Name ..... Joh 15:16;16:23,26
  - > give thanks to God the Father in Jesus' Name ..... Eph5:20
- By means of the Holy Spirit
  - > by the Spirit we cry Abba Father ..... Ro 8:15-16
  - > pray in the Spirit..... Eph 6:8
  - > pray in the Holy Spirit ..... Jude 20
  - > with our spirit (tongues) and with understanding
- (Interpretation of Tongues) ..... 1 Co 14:13-15
  - > Spirit enables our praying by interceding through us and for us.....Ro 8:26
- c) IS THERE A SPECIAL PRAYER POSTURE?
  - Like fasting, prayer is a place of humility before God and generally the prayer position shows our dependence on God.
  - On the face..... Nu 20:6; De 9:25; Jos 5:14; 2Ch 20:18; Mt 26:39
  - Face between knees..... IKi 18:42
  - Bowing down..... Ge 24:26; Ex 4:31; 12:27; 34:8
  - Kneeling ..... I Ki 8:54; 2 Ch 6:13; Ezr 9:5 Ps 95:6;Isa45:23;Da6:10; Lu 22:41; Ac 7:60; Eph 3:14
  - Standing ..... IKi 8:22; Mk 11:25; Lu 18:11-13
  - Lifted hands ..... Ps 28:2; La 2:19; ITi 2:8
- d) INNER ATTITUDE IS MORE IMPORTANT THAN OUTER POSTURE
  - With humility..... 2Ch 7:14; 33:12; Lu 22:42
  - Not for show..... Mt 6:5-7
  - In faith.....Mt 21:22; Jas 1:6; Heb 10:22
  - With truth..... Ps 17:1; 145:18; Joh 4:24
  - With confidence..... Ps 56:9; Ps 86:7; IJo 5:14; Heb 10:19-22
  - Having forgiven..... Mt 6:12; Mk 11:25-26
  - Proper heart.....Jer 29:13; La 3:41; Ps 119:58,145; Heb 10:22
- e) PRAYER IS OFTEN ACCOMPANIED BY
  - Watching (Be Alert!) ..... Lu 21:36;IPe 4:7; Col 4.2
  - Confession of personal and corporate sins ..... Jas 5:16
  - Repentance.....1 Ki 8:33; Jer 36:7
  - Fasting..... Ne 1:4; Da 9:3; Ac 13:3
  - Weeping..... Jer 31:9; Ho 12:4
  - Praise..... Ps 66:17
  - Thanksgiving..... Php 4:6; Col 4:2
  - Proclamation..... Ps 48:1-3; 18:3,46; 116:1,2 f) A
- TEACHING PASSAGE..... Mt 6:5-14
- Not to be seen of men..... Mt 6:5

- In secret .....Mt 6:6 - Don't keep on babbling like the pagans ..... Mt 6:7
- g) OUTLINE OF A PRAYER GIVEN BY JESUS ..... Mt 6: 9-13  
Sometimes called the "Lord's prayer" but it was meant to be the "Disciples prayer".
- Our prayer is to God alone ..... Mt 6:9
  - > remind yourself of Who God is..... see Section B
- He is our Father in heaven ..... Mt 6:9
  - > see the Fatherhood of God..... see Section B7

DO NOT COPY

- He is to be thanked and praised ..... Mt 6:9
  - > His Names reflect His relation to us ..... see Section B3
  - > see Salvation ..... see Section E
  - > see Providence of God..... see Index
- In faith desire the Kingdom of God in all areas of this world ..... Mt 6:10
  - > listen for direction from the Holy Spirit
- In faith ask for all the provision needed ..... Mt 6:11
- Ask for forgiveness and forgive others .....Mt 6:12
- Pray for spiritual leading & protection for all under your care.....Mt 6:13
  - > put on full Armour of God..... Eph 6:10-20
- We are reminded that God forgives us in the same way that we
  - > forgive one another ..... Mt 6:14,15
- h) PRAYERS ARE ANSWERED
  - Promised ..... Isa 58:9; Jer 29:12; Mt 7:7
  - Sometimes immediately..... Isa 65:24; Da 9:21,23
  - Sometimes after a delay..... Lu 18:7; 1Ki 18:42-44; Da 10:12,13
  - Sometimes differently than we expect .....2Co 12:8-9
  - Better than we can expect or think ..... Jer 33:3; Eph 3:20
- i) HINDRANCES TO PRAYERS BEING HEARD OR ANSWERED
  - We fight for what we want instead of asking..... Jas 4:2
  - We ask with selfish motives..... Jas 4:3
  - We ask while making a practice of sin ..... Ps 66:18; Isa 59:1-2
  - We are deaf to the cry of the poor ..... Pr 21:13
  - We oppose the saints of God ..... Ps 18:40-41; Mic 3:2-4
  - We are disobedient to known command of God ..... Pr 28:9
  - We have an unforgiving spirit..... Mt 5:22-24; 6:12-15
  - We lack faith ..... Heb 11:6; Jas 1:6
  - We keep idols in our heart ..... Eze 8:5-18; 14:1-3 - We have turmoil in our home ..... 1Pe 3:7
- j) PRIVATE PRAYER
  - Jesus as our Example..... Mt 14:23; 26:36,39; Mk 1:35; Lu 9:18,19
  - Will be rewarded openly .....Mt 6:6
  - New Testament Examples:
    - > Anna .....Lu2:36,37
    - > Paul ..... Ac 9:11
    - > Peter ..... Ac 9:40
    - > Cornelius ..... Ac 10:30
- k) PUBLIC PRAYER
  - Agreement in prayer ..... Mt 18:19-20
  - May not be understood by others if prayer in "tongues"..... 1Co 14:13-16

- Pray for Interpretation of "prayers in tongues" in church meeting ..... 1Co 14:13-16 - Should be offered for
  - > all men, kings, and all in authority..... 1Ti 2:1-2
  - > for ministers ..... 2Co 1:11; Php 1:19 > all believers ..... Eph 6:18
  - > our enemies ..... Mt 5:44; Lu 6:27,28 > the sick..... Jas 5:14
  - > when our brethren are in danger..... Ac 12:12
    - > for all nations ..... Ps 2:8; 1Ki 8:41-43; Isa 56:7

## 7. FASTING

### a) INTRODUCTION

- Fasting means denying our bodies some of its usual provision.
- Not a cure-all for past sins ..... Jer 14:10-12
- Ordained for the Church by Jesus .....Mk 2:20; Lu 5:35 - Some demons only come out by prayer & fasting .....Mt 17:15-21 - Bible mentions denying yourself:
  - > food and water..... Ex 34:28; De 9:9
  - > food ..... Mt 4:1-2; Lu 4:1-2
  - > certain pleasant foods..... Da 10:3
  - > married persons may fast from sex - for a time, by mutual consent, to pray..... 1Co 7:4-5

### b) A TEACHING PASSAGE ..... Isa 58:11 - Purpose & circumstances of a fast

- > fasting should humble the body..... v3 Ps35:13
- > the purpose is NOT ONLY to humble the body.... v5
- > we are to do the Lord's pleasure, not our own..... v3 Zec 7:5
- > we are not to exploit our workers while we fast.... v3
- > not heard by God if our fast results in quarreling... v4
- Characteristics of a proper fast
  - > what is done in secret will be rewarded openly..... Mt 6:17-18
  - > spiritual & social oppression released..... v6,10 Ps 35:13
  - > helping others in a practical way..... v7,10
  - > personal sanctification..... v9
- Consequences of a proper fast
  - > health ..... v8,11
  - > protection from God in front and behind ..... v8
  - > guidance..... v9,11

### c) EXAMPLES OF FASTS AND THEIR CIRCUMSTANCES

- Extraordinary Fasts
  - > Moses while receiving the Ten Commandments.... De 9:9,18; Ex 34:28
  - > Elijah fleeing from Jezebel - angel fed him..... 1Ki 19:2-9 >
- Jesus after His baptism and Holy Spirit anointing. Lu 4:1-2
- Israel wishing to be free from Philistine rule..... 1Sa 7:6
  - > Moabites & Ammonites..... 2Ch 20:3

- Ezra mourning over the unfaithfulness of Israel ..... Ezr 10:6
- Daniel to gain understanding of a vision ..... Da 10:3
- Paul after he met the Lord, fasted 3 days while blind ..... Ac 9:9
- Leaders of Antioch church sending out Barnabas & Saul... Ac 13:2-3
- Paul and Barnabas while appointing elders ..... Ac 14:23
- Esther before appearing before the king ..... Es 4:16
- Elders of Jezreel - in order to accuse & kill Naboth..... 1Ki 21:12
- Ahab delayed God's judgment on himself ..... 1Ki 21:27-29 - Nineveh - to prevent God's judgment..... Jon 3:6-10

d) ACCOMPANIED BY

- Mourning ..... Ezr 10:6
- Confession of sin ..... 1Sa 7:6
- Prayer & hearing from the Lord ..... 2Ch 20:3 - Privacy, not for show  
..... Mt 6:16-18

e) NOT ACCOMPANIED BY

- Somberness & disfiguring ..... Mt 6:16-18; Es 4:16-5:5

f) PRACTICAL CONSIDERATIONS WHEN FASTING

- Drink water when abstaining from food. Implied by words "*afterward He hungered*" - not "afterward He thirsted" ..... Mt 4:1,2; Lu 4:1,2

Note: Fasting from food longer than 7 to 15 days can be dangerous to your health. Longer fasts should only be under clear, certain direction and miraculous enablement from the Lord.

- The three forty-day fasts mentioned in the Bible were all MIRACULOUS in nature and initiated by God - not the one fasting (Moses, Elijah, Jesus).

> Moses did not eat or DRINK for forty days..... Ex 34:28 (you can die in the desert in 24 hours if without water). > An Angel fed

Elijah a special meal before

his forty-day fast ..... 1Ki 19:5-8

> Jesus was led (literal = driven) by the Spirit into the wilderness to fast ..... Lu 4:1,2

.....and angels ministered to Him afterward.

- g) Longer fasts are all right if you've been given a special gift or grace from the Lord for the fast. When you have this gift, you are not hungry. "Afterward (not during the fast) he hungered" ..... Lu 4:1,2

## 8. GIVING-TITHES AND OFFERINGS

### a) INTRODUCTION

- Christ's giving of Himself for our salvation is the strongest

> example of giving..... Ga 1:4; 2:20

- God is a giver... including His Son ..... see Section B6, B7

- There is a spiritual gift of giving; we are not talking about that gift here ..... see Section F10, Ro 12:8 b) TITHE (giving of 1/10 of our income to the work of the Lord) - Practiced before giving of the Law to Moses

> Abraham gave a tithe ..... Ge 14:20; Heb 7:4-10

- > Abraham was 430 years before Moses ..... Ga 3:17
- > Jacob promises to give a tithing to God..... Ge 28:22

DO NOT COPY

During the time of Moses' Law

- > Law of Moses demands a tithe of everything..... Le 27:30,32
  - > Levites received the tithe for work of God ..... Nu 18:21
  - > God condemns Israel for not giving a tithe..... Mal 3:6-12
  - > God blesses if the nation tithes..... Mal 3:6-12
  - > Church leaders may live from the tithe money..... 1Co 9:1-14
  - > Levites also required to tithe ..... Nu 18:25-32; Ne 10:38
- During the time of Jesus on the earth
- > we should do more than just tithe..... Mt 23:23; Lu 11:42

c) EXAMPLES OF GENEROUS /SACRIFICIAL GIVERS

- Israel when the Tabernacle was built ..... Ex 36:5
- Poor widow put in all her wealth ..... Lu 21:1-4
- Early Church gave to the needy ..... Ac 4:34-35 - Macedonian church gave out of its poverty ..... 2 Co 8:1-15

d) SACRIFICIAL GIVERS RECEIVE ABUNDANCE FROM GOD

- Giving does not buy God's provision – it releases it..... Mal 3:10
- Widow of Zarephath gave last food to Elijah... and was abundantly provided for ..... I Ki 17:12-15
- Mary of Bethany anointed Jesus with expensive perfume ... and promised special recognition ..... Mt 26:7-13

e) NEW TESTAMENT GIVING

- Giver should be rightly related to other ..... Mt 5:23-24
- Give without a big show, even secretly ..... Mt 6:1-4
- Freely you have received, freely give ..... Mt 10:8
- More blessed to give than to receive ..... Ac20:35
- Giving according to your income ..... I Co 16:1-2
  - > those handling money should be approved..... I Co 16:3-4
- Sow sparingly, reap sparingly ..... 2Co 9:6; Lu 6:38
- Sow generously, reap generously ..... 2Co 9:6; Lu 6:38
- Decide ahead of time..... 2Co 9:7
- Give cheerfully, not under compulsion ..... 2Co 9:7
- God's reply to careful, cheerful giving
  - > abundance of grace ..... 2 Co 9:8
  - > abundance for every good work ..... 2 Co 9:8,11 - Result of giving
    - > needs of the church are supplied ..... 2Co 9:12
    - > thanksgiving to God ..... 2 Co 9:12
- Giving is a confession of our faith ..... 2 Co 9:13
- Giving stimulates prayers ..... 2 Co9:14
- God gave first ..... 2 Co 9:15

**9. MARRIAGE AND THE FAMILY**

a) MARRIAGE IS INSTITUTED BY GOD

- A particular form for a wedding ceremony is not given in Bible.

- Adam and Eve..... Ge2:24; Mt 19:4-6
  - Jesus blesses marriage by His presence and a miracle..... Joh 2:1-11
  - Marriage should be honored by all ..... Heb 13:4
- Christian is not to marry an unbeliever..... 2 Co 6:14-18
- > a Christian is to remain married to an unbeliever..... I Co 7:12-14 >
- a Christian is free if unbeliever chooses to leave..... I Co 7:12-16
- b) GOD'S BLESSINGS ON THE HOME OF THOSE WHO FEAR HIM..... Ps 128
  - experience true happiness ..... v.2
  - experience God's favor ..... v.2 - experience fruitfulness
  - ..... v.3 - posterity will inherit the blessings
  - ..... v.3,6 c) HUSBANDS AND WIVES
- "Whoso findeth a wife findeth a good thing." ..... Pr 18:22 - Husband's duties
  - > love your wife, as Christ does the Church..... Eph 5:25
  - > be sensitive to her weaknesses as a woman..... I Pe 3:7
  - > provide for the family ..... I Ti 5:8
  - > give to his wife her conjugal rights ..... I Co 7:3; Eph 5:31
  - > nourish and cherish his wife, as his own body..... Eph 5:28,29
  - > provide headship for his wife ..... Ge 2:22, ICo 11:3
  - > praise her..... Pr 31:28
  - > Please her ..... Pr 5:18; Ec 9:9; De 24:5; I Co 7:33
  - > speak tenderly to her..... Ca 2:10-14; Ho 2:14
- Wives' duties ..... Pr 31:10
  - > submit to her husband..... Eph 5:22,24, Col 3:18
  - > honor her husband..... Es 1:20; Pr 31:23
  - > obey her husband ..... I Pe 3:6
  - > love one's husband ..... Tit 2:4
  - > be full of good deeds..... I Pe3:1-6; Tit 2:5
  - > give special consideration for the home ..... Tit 2:5; Pr 31:15,27
  - > be sensible, chaste, domestic and kind ..... Tit 2:5
  - > dress modestly, adorn inner jewels of the heart..... I Pe 3:3,4; I Ti 2:9,10
  - > please her husband ..... 1 Co 7:34
  - > be a helper to her husband ..... Ge 2:18-20
- > show hospitality ..... 1 Ti5:10 - Examples:
  - > of godly affection in marriage: Jacob/Rachel ..... Ge 29:20
  - > the beauties of marital love ..... Song of Sol > godly
- parents: Joseph and Mary ..... Mt 1,2, Lu2 > couples serving the Lord together:
  - Aquila/Priscilla..... Ac 18:2,26
- d) MARRIAGE AS A TYPE OF OUR RELATIONSHIP WITH GOD
  - God and Israel..... Jer 3:14; Eze 16:1-8

- Jesus and the Church..... Eph 5:21-33; 2Co 11:2;  
Re 21:2,9; 22:17
- e) MARRIAGE OF ADAM AND EVE AS A TYPE OF CHRIST AND THE CHURCH
  - No creature found suitable for a bride for Adam.....Ge 2:19-20
    - > sinful man is not suitable as a bride of Jesus,  
we must be born again of the Spirit ..... Joh 3:3-7 - Eve  
taken out of Adam's side..... Ge 2:21-22
      - > Church comes out of Jesus' pierced side..... Joh 19:34
  - Eve is of the flesh and bone of Adam ..... Ge 2:23
    - > that which is of Spirit is spirit, of flesh is flesh..... Joh 3:6; Eph 5:30-32
  - Eve has the life of Adam, taken out of Adam..... Ge 2:23
    - > our new life is from being put into Christ Jesus..... Joh 17:20-23; 2Co 5:17
- f) REMAINING UNMARRIED IS ALSO ENCOURAGED IN SCRIPTURE
  - However, marriage must not be forbidden ..... I Ti 4:1-3
  - Example of Jesus, unmarried ..... The Gospels
  - Example of Paul, remaining unmarried special gift  
from God..... I Co 7:8 - Jesus  
teaches His disciples ..... Mt 19:10-12
  - Paul teaches the Church ..... I Co 7:1-2,7-9 > because of  
this "present crisis" ..... I Co 7:26
- g) DIVORCE
  - God hates divorce ..... Mal 2:16
  - Moses' law allows divorce for various reasons ..... De 24:1-4
    - > probably Moses' law was given to regulate an existing practice because in divorce a  
written contract is given..... De 24:1 > the woman  
is free to remarry afterwards..... De 24:2
  - Reason for Moses' permitting divorce for various reasons
    - > Jesus says - because of their hard hearts..... Mt 19:8; Mk 10:2-12
    - > it wasn't this way at the beginning..... Mt 19:3-5; Mk 10:6-9
- h) TERMINATION OF A MARRIAGE COVENANT
  - Death of one person frees the other to remarry..... Ro 7:2-3; I Co 7:39
  - A believer is free if an unbelieving spouse leaves.....I Co 7:13-16
  - Some believe Jesus allowed divorce for reason of  
adultery ..... Mt 5:31-32; 19:9
    - > an example of reconciliation after adultery..... Jer 3:1; Hosea
    - > God "divorces" Israel for spiritual "adultery"..... Jer 3:8
- i) SCRIPTURE WARNS AGAINST SOME MARRIAGES
  - In the beginning there were no stated restrictions
    - > Cain & Seth probably married close relatives
    - > Abraham married a close relative (later forbidden  
by law) ..... Ge 20:11-12
    - > Jacob marries two sisters (later forbidden

- by law)..... Ge 29:21-30 - Law forbids
- marrying close relatives ..... Le 18:5-30; 20:17-23
  - > John the Baptist condemns King Herod for marrying his brother's wife, while his brother was still alive..... Mt 14:3-4
  - A believer should not marry an unbeliever ..... 2 Co 6:14-16
  - Homosexual relationships are condemned ..... Le 18:22; 20:13;  
I Co 6:9,10; I Ti 1:9,10
- j) POLYGAMY (MORE THAN ONE WIFE)
- Polygamy forbidden. When practiced, it brought pain and sorrow to families.
  - > for Israel's king ..... De 17:17
  - > for all Israel-don't break faith with first wife..... Mal 2:15
  - > one man one wife at the beginning ..... Ge 2:24; Mk 10:6-8
  - > Church leaders must have only one wife..... I Ti 3:2,12; Tit 1:6
- First example is Lamech, he had 2 wives..... Ge 4:19
  - > from the line of Cain ..... Ge 4:17-18
  - > he was also a murderer..... Ge 4:23-24 >
  - contrast with the line of Seth & Enosh
    - > men began to call on the Name of the Lord..... Ge 4:25-26
- Abram married Sarai & Hagar, Sarai's servant ..... Ge 16:3 > Abram believed Sarai's logic rather than God's promise ..... Ge 16:2
  - > Hagar despised Sarai after she became pregnant... Ge 16:4
  - > result is a quarrel between Abram and Sarai..... Ge 16:5
  - > result is sorrow for Hagar..... Ge 16:16; 21:10-13
  - > Hagar's son, Ishmael, is Isaac's enemy..... Ge 16:12; 21:9
- Esau had 2 wives ..... Ge 26:34
  - > this was a source of sorrow for his parent ..... Ge 26:35
  - > Esau married Canaanites to displease his parents.. Ge 28:8-9
- Laban tricks Jacob into marrying Leah ..... Ge 29:22-30
  - > Jacob also marries Rachel..... Ge 29:28-30
  - > Jacob loves Rachel more than Leah ..... Ge 29:28-33
  - > Rachel is jealous of Leah because of children ..... Ge 30:1
  - > Servant girls given as wives ..... Ge 30:3,9
  - > trouble between children from different wives..... Ge 37:11,26-28
- Gideon had many wives ..... Jdg 8:30
  - > one son murdered 70 of the others..... Jdg 9:1-5
- Samuel's father had 2 wives ..... I Sa 1:2
  - > Elkanah loved Hannah more ..... I Sa 1:5
  - > other wife was a rival and caused discord..... I Sa 1:6-7
- David had several wives ..... 2 Sa 3:2,5
  - > Bathsheba was obtained through murder..... 2 Sa 11:26-27
  - > incest became a problem between

- Ammon & Tamar..... 2 Sa 13:1-15  
 > Absalom kills Ammon ..... 2 Sa 13:28-29  
 > rivalry between sons of David from different  
 wives..... I Ki 1:17-21 - Solomon had  
 many wives .....I Ki 1:1-6  
 > he was led away from God by his wives ..... I Ki 11:3-4 > he began  
 to practice idolatry..... I Ki 11:7  
 > God's anger is revealed against Solomon ..... I Ki 11:9-13  
 > Solomon's kingdom to be lost..... I Ki 11:9,11,  
 - Rehoboam preferred one wife over the other ..... 2 Ch 11:18-21  
 - Heathen king had many wives ..... Da 5:2  
 - But marriages made prior to salvation are not to be  
 changed... ..... I Co 7:20

#### k) PARENTS AND CHILDREN

Again, the greatest examples of Parent/Child relationships are found in how God relates to us as His children and how we should respond to Him as our Father.

- Parental duties:

- "And David returned to bless his household"*..... 2 Sa 6:20  
 > teach one's children.....De 6:6,7; 4:9  
 > train one's children..... Pr 22:6;Eph 6:4  
 > provide for one's family ..... 2 Co 12:14  
 > sanctify them unto God.....:..... Job 1:5; Lu 2:22-23  
 > nurture one's children .....Eph 6:4  
 > to reprove them ..... Pr 29:15; Re 3:19  
 > to control them..... 1 Sa 3:13; 1 Ti 3:4,12  
 > to chasten them..... 2 Sa 7:14; Heb 12:6; Pr 13:24  
 > to discipline them..... Pr 13:24; 22:15; 29:17  
 > to love them..... Tit 2:4; Pr 13:24  
 > to not provoke them to anger ..... Eph 6:4  
 > to be a godly example to them ..... 2Ti 1:5; 2Ch 26:4  
 > to be forgiving towards them..... Lu 15:20-24  
 > to include them in worship times ..... Jos 8:35; Ne 12:43 Note: Parents

must be careful to deal with sin in their own lives. The Scriptures warn us that those same sins may be passed on to our children and posterity (Ex 20:5; 34:7).

- Children's duties

- > honor and respect parents..... Ex 20:12, Eph 6:2  
 > obey parents in all things..... Col 3:20  
 > make their parents happy ..... Pr 23:24,25; Pr 10:1  
 > not to mock or despise them ..... Pr 30:7 >  
 pay dose attention to their words ..... Pr 6:20-23 > take  
 care of them when they are old ..... 1 Ti 5:3,4

#### l) BARRENNESS (NO CHILDREN IN A MARRIAGE)

- Nowhere in Scripture is this a reason for divorce.
- Sometimes (usually not) it can be a judgment of God
  - > Michal, Saul's daughter, David's wife ..... 2 Sa 6:23
- Many of the beloved women of the Bible started barren. God intervened and some of these children are the most important people in the Bible.
- Sarai, Abram's wife, was barren ..... Ge 11:29- 30
  - > God's promise of a son ..... Ge 12:2; 15:4-6; 18:10

DO NOT COPY

- > wrong human effort produces Ishmael..... Ge 16:1-5
- > Isaac is born according to the promise ..... Ge 21:1-7
- Rachel, Jacob's wife, was barren ..... Ge 30:1
  - > false human effort ..... Ge 30:3
  - > Joseph is born according to God's will..... Ge 30:22-24
- Samson's mother was barren ..... Jdg 13:2 > angel promises a special child ..... Jdg 13:3
  - > Samson is born..... Jdg 13:24-25
- Hannah, Samuel's mother, was barren ..... 1Sa 1:5 > she prays ..... 1Sa 1:10-17
  - > Samuel is born ..... 1Sa 1:20
- Shunammite woman who helped Elisha was barren ..... 2Ki 4:14
  - > promised a child ..... 2Ki 4:16
  - > child is born ..... 2Ki 4:17
  - > child is miraculously raised from the dead ..... 2Ki 4:32-35
- Elizabeth, Zacharias' wife, was barren ..... Lu 1:5-7
  - > angel Gabriel's promise to Zacharias ..... Lu 1:13
  - > John the Baptist is born ..... Lu 1:57-58

m) OTHER REFERENCE TO THE FAMILY

- Home to be a place of serving others ..... 3Jo 5-8; Tit 1:8
- Christian leaders expected to have exemplary homes ..... 1Ti 3:4,5
- Not providing for one's family worse than unbelief..... 1Ti 5:8
- Often whole families turn to Christ ..... Ac 16:15,33; Joh 4:53 - Families were sometimes called to serve the Lord together:
  - > Moses, Aaron, and Miriam ..... Ex 4:29; 15:20
  - > Andrew and Peter ..... Joh 1:41; Mt 10:2
  - > James and John (sons of Zebedee) ..... Mt 10:2; 20:20
- Scriptures teach appropriateness of family worship ..... Ro 16:5; 1Co 16:19; Ex 12:3,4; 33:7-10
- Maintaining God's presence the key to continued blessing ..... 2 Sa 6:11

**H. DEATH & ENDTIMES**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS - THIS SECTION**

**HI. PHYSICAL DEATH AND THE STATE OF THE DEAD**

**H2. SECOND COMING (ADVENT) OF JESUS**

**H3. RESURRECTION OF THE DEAD & FINAL JUDGMENT**

**H4. HEAVEN AND HELL -FINAL DESTINATIONS**

**1. PHYSICAL DEATH AND THE STATE OF THE DEAD**

a) OLD TESTAMENT

- Resurrection from death ..... Job 17:13; Ps 49:15; Ec 9:10; Ho 13:14 - SHEOLplace of the dead ..... De 32:22; Job 26:6; Ps 16:10; 139:8; Pr 15:11

**b) CHARACTERISTICS OF THE DEAD**

- Body without the spirit is dead ..... Jas 2:26
- Unable to move ..... Mt 28:4; Re 1:17
- Ignorant of all human affairs ..... Ec 9:5 - Have no human passions  
..... Ec 9:6
- Unable to glorify God ..... Ps 115:17
- Don't return to the world ..... Job 7:9-10;14:10,14;Lu 16:26

**c) FORBIDDEN EXPRESSIONS OF GRIEF OR RESPECT FOR THE DEAD**

- Cutting, tattooing, shaving ..... Le 19:28; De 14:1-2
- Offerings to the dead ..... De 26:14
- Hopeless grieving like pagans ..... 1 Th 4:13
- Calling upon the dead ..... De 18:11; Isa 8:19

**d) HISTORY OF DEATH**

- Foretold by God as a consequence of disobedience ..... Ge 2:17; 3:3
- Brought into world through man's disobedience ..... Ge 3:19; Ro 5:12
- All people will die ..... Heb 9:27
- Christ Jesus conquered death ..... Ro 6:9;Re 1:18
- Christ delivers us from fear of death..... Heb 2:15
- All shall be raised from the dead..... Ac 24:15
  - > some to everlasting life ..... Ro 2:5-10; 2Th 1:5-10
  - > some to everlasting punishment ..... Ro 2:5-10; 2Th 1:5-10
- Death finally be destroyed by Christ..... Ho 13:14; 1Co 15:26
- None will die in heaven..... Lu 20:36; Re 21:4
- There is a second (eternal) death ..... Re 21:8

**e) THE PLACE OF THE DEAD BEFORE CHRIST'S RESURRECTION - SHEOL**

- Called Sheol in Old Testament - Sheol included Hades. -  
FOR THE RIGHTEOUS - In Lu 16:19-28 described as
  - > Abraham's bosom (or by Abraham's side) ..... vs 22
  - > a place of being comforted, blessed, appreciated ..... vs 25
- FOR THE UNRIGHTEOUS - In Lu 16:19-28 described  
as
  - > A place of awareness of life on earth and torment ..... vs 23,25,27,28
  - > A place of suffering, thirst because of 'this flame' ..... vs 23,
  - > An impassable 'great gulf' separate from the righteous..... vs 26
  - > a place of accountability to the testimony of Scripture..... vs 29

**f) THE PLACE OF THE RIGHTEOUS DEAD AFTER CHRIST'S RESURRECTION**

- With Christ. Php 1:22-23; 2Co 5:8; Lu 23:43

**g) THE PLACE OF THE UNRIGHTEOUS DEAD UNTIL THE LAST RESURRECTION - HADES**

- Completely separate from place of the righteous ..... Lu 16:26
  - > those in Hades cannot reach the earth ..... Lu 16:27
  - > Righteous cannot be held in Hades
  - > Christ did not remain in Hades ..... Ac 2:27

- > Jesus holds the keys to death and Hades..... Re 1:18
- > Gates of Hades will be overcome by the Church... Mt 16:18
- > Death and Hades are used as form of punishment
- > 4th seal, 2 riders Death and Hades empowered to kill..... Re 6:8
- > is a place of torment described as fire ..... Lu 16:23-24
- > held for judgment while continuing their punishment..... 2 Pe 2:9 -
- Hades gives up its dead before the judgment ..... Re 20:13 - Death and Hades to be judged and thrown into Gehenna...Re 20:14
- > Who is in Hades?
- place of unrepentant cities, waiting for the judgment..... Mt 11:23
- rich man (unrighteous) goes to Hades..... Lu 16:23 all
- unbelievers..... Joh 3:18
- h) THE PLACES OF SOME ANGELS UNTIL THE LAST JUDGMENT
- Earth,see ..... Sections C2, C3, C4, C5
- Tartarus a gloomy place of bondage ..... 2 Pe 2:4
- the dungeon of the angels who are kept for judgment..... 2 Pe 2:4; Jude 6 some
- demons released during last times..... Re 9:1-11

**2. SECOND COMING (ADVENT) OF JESUS**

a) FORETOLD.....1Co 4:5; 1Ti 6:14; 2Ti 4:1; Mk 14:62; Joh 14:3; Joh 21:22; Ac 1:11; Ac 3:19; Heb 9:28; Jude 14-15; Tit 2:13

b) JESUS FORETELLS HIS RETURN Mt 24 Mk 13 Lu21 OTHERS

- Many will come claiming to be Christ :5 :6 :8
- Wars and rumors of wars. :6 :7 :9
- Famines and earthquakes :7 :8 :11
- Persecution of the Church :9 :12
- Many offended and leave the faith :10 :9 :16
- False prophets will deceive many :11,24 :22
- Gospel preached in the whole world :14 :10
- Rise of a great, ruthless leader :15 :14 2 Th 2:1-12
- > apparently connected with religion :15 :14

- Coming will be obvious :27 :26 :27 2 Th 2:1-4
- Coming in great glory and power :30 :26 :27 2 Th 1:7-10; Jude 14
- His angels will gather His elect :31 :27 1 Th4:-5:
- Only the Father knows the time :36 :32
  - > not angels nor Jesus, unexpected :36
- Similar to the time of the flood :38 2 Pe 3:3-9; 2Ti 3:1-5
- Some people taken, others left :40
- We must watch for His return :42 :33-37 :36
- We must be found faithful :44-46 :36 :34

c) A TIME OF WAITING FOR THE SECOND COMING..... Mt 25:

- Parable of 10 Virgins ..... Mt 25:1-13
  - > long delay ..... Mt 25:5; 2Pe 3:3-9
  - > some will be ready and enter, others excluded..... Mt 25:10-12
  - > keep watch, you do not know the day or the hour.. Mt 25:13
- Parable of the Talents ..... Mt 25:14-30
  - > long delay ..... Mt 25:19; 2Pe 3:9
- > be found busy and faithful ..... Mt 25:21.23 > lazy servant cast out ..... Mt 25:26
- Parable of Sheep and Goats ..... Mt 25:31-46
  - > separation of righteous and unrighteous ..... Mt 25:32
  - > some to inherit the kingdom ..... Mt 25:34
  - > some to be cursed and banished to eternal fire..... Mt 25:41

d) OTHER RELEVANT SCRIPTURES RELATING TO END TIMES

- The return of scattered Israel..... Eze 36:24-38; Eze 37:1-14 > possibly fulfilled in 1948 when Israel became a nation again.
- Great final battle against Israel ..... Eze 38 & 39 - Restoration of the Temple ..... Eze40:-48:
  - > (Some believe this is fulfilled in the Church..... 1Co 3:16,17; 6:19; 2Co 6:16; Re 3:12)
- Rise and fall of 4 kingdoms before God's triumph..... Da 2:31-45; 7:-8:
- Seventy 7's relating to events for the end..... Da 9:20-27
- Angel message regarding final battle with Israel..... Da 11: & 12: - Over great obstacles, Jesus triumphs over all..... Revelations

e) PROPER RESPONSE TO THESE 'END OF THE AGE' EVENTS

- Watchful, not asleep ..... Mt 25:13; Mk 13:37; Re 3:2
  - > in order to pray..... 1Pe 4:7 > for self-control..... 1Th 5:6-7
- Actively doing His work .....Mt 24:45-47; Lu 19:13
- Actively engaged in employment, working hard .....2 Th 2:1-2; 2 Th 3:5-15

- Blameless and holy... ..... 2 Pe 3:11; 1 Th 5:23
- Obedience ..... 1 Ti 6:14
- Peace in our hearts ..... Joh 14:1-4
- Patient waiting ..... 1 Co 1:7
- Continuing in Jesus ..... 1 Jo 2:28
- Good deeds with good motives ..... 1 Co 4:5; Mt 25:34-46

DO NOT COPY

Hopeful of reward ..... Lu 12:37; Php 3:20-21; Col 3:4; 1 Pe 5:4

### 3. RESURRECTION OF THE DEAD & FINAL JUDGMENT

a) BOTH ARE FOUNDATIONAL DOCTRINES ..... Heb 6:2; 1 Co 15:50- 57

#### b) OLD TESTAMENT REFERENCES

- Resurrection after death ..... Job 19:26; Ps 49:15;  
Isa 26:19

- Prophecy of Jesus' resurrection ..... Ps 16:10; Ac 2:27

- Some to everlasting life, some shame ..... Da 12:2

- God will ransom, redeem us from death ..... Ho 13:14

#### c) JESUS AS 'FIRSTFRUITS' OF THOSE RAISED FROM THE DEAD

..... Mt 28; Mk 16:1-14; Lu 24:1-46; Joh 20:1-31; 1Co 15:1-11

- Many infallible proofs ..... Lu 24:35-43; Joh 20:20,27;  
Ac 1:3

- Believers shall likewise rise ..... Ac 26:23; Ro 6:5; 1Co 15:49  
& Php 3:21

#### d) RESURRECTION OF PEOPLE

- Jesus' resurrection is our assurance ..... 1Co 15:12-28 - Resurrection body  
..... 1Co 15:35-49

> spiritual body ..... 1Co 15:44

> see Glorification ..... Section E12

- When shall this be? ..... 1Co 15:50-57; 1Th4:13-18

- Righteous & wicked will be resurrected..... Joh 5:28-29; Ac 24:15;  
Re 20:13

#### e) SOME DOUBT

- Sadducees corrected by Jesus ..... Lu 20:27-38

- Some sneered, some delayed, some believed..... Ac 17:32

- Some false teachers corrected by Paul ..... 1Co 15:12; 2Ti 2:18

f) FINAL JUDGMENT - ONE OF THE FOUNDATIONAL DOCTRINES... Heb 6:2

#### g) CIRCUMSTANCES

- At the coming of Jesus ..... Mt 25:31; 2Ti 4:1

- Exact time is unknowable ..... Mk 13:32

- Administered by Christ Jesus ..... Joh 5:22,27; Ac 10:42;  
Ro 14:10; 2Co 5:10

- According to heavenly books ..... Re 20:12

- Believers will be with Him ..... 1Co 6:2; Re 20:4

- Believers innocent by Gospel..... Jas 2:12

> rewarded ..... 2Ti 4:8; Re 11:18

- Unbelievers judged guilty..... Mt 7:22-23; 25:41; Ro 2:12-15 - All  
to be judged

>all people..... Mt 25:32; Heb 9:27; 12:23;

- Re 20:12
- > present heavens and earth ..... 2Pe 3:7
- > devils shall be condemned..... 2Pe2:4; Jude 6

#### 4. HEAVEN AND HELL-FINAL DESTINATIONS

- a) HEAVEN, THE DWELLING PLACE OF GOD..... 1Ki 8:30; Mt 6:9
  - God reigns in heaven ..... Ps 11:4; 135:6; Da 4:35
  - God answers from heaven ..... 1Ch 21:26; 2Ch 7:14;  
Ne 9:27; Ps 20:6; Mt 6:9
  - God sends His judgments..... Ge 19:24; 1Sa 2:10; Da 4:13;  
Ro 1:18
  - Glorified Christ in heaven ..... Ac 7:55-56
  - Jesus as Mediator in heaven ..... Ac 3:21; Heb 6:20; 9:12,24 - Jesus  
All-Powerful in heaven ..... Mt 28:18; 1Pe 3:22
- b) HEAVEN, THE DWELLING PLACE  
OF HOLY ANGELS..... Mt 18:10; 24:36 c)  
HEAVEN, THE DWELLING PLACE OF THE REDEEMED
  - Prepared for us by God
    - > Jesus will take us there when He returns ..... Joh 14:1-4; 1Th 4:17
    - > our future dwelling will be built by God ..... 2Co 5:1; Joh 14:1-4
  - A place to store up our treasure for ever ..... Mt 6:20
  - Names of the righteous written in heaven ..... Lu 10:20 - New Jerusalem
    - > a city from heaven prepared for believers ..... Re 21:1-3
    - > no more tears, death, mourning, pain ..... Re 21:4
    - > unrighteous not allowed in ..... Re 21:8
- d) HELL (GEHENNA) -FINAL DESTINY OF THE UNRIGHTEOUS
  - Called the Lake of Fire ..... Re 19:20; 20:10,14,15
  - Called the second death ..... Re 21:8
  - Gehenna is contrasted with the kingdom of God..... Mk 9:43-47 - Fear God who can  
destroy BODY and SOUL in hell..... Mt 10:28; Lu 12:5 e) WHAT IS HELL LIKE?
  - Torment & Fire images ..... Isa 66:24;  
Mt 3:12; 5:22; 13:37-42; Mt 25:41; Mk 9:48
  - Compared to
    - > destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah..... Jude 7
    - > flood but with fire not water ..... 2Pe 3:7
- f) WHO WILL BE IN HELL?
  - The godless..... Isa33:14
  - The rebels against God ..... Isa 66:24
  - Those using slanderous speech ..... Mt 5:22; Jas 3:6
  - One who misleads children .....Mt 18:8-9; Mk 9:42-48
  - Pharisees..... Mt 23:33 - The unrighteous  
..... Mt 25:41

- Those with the mark of the beast ..... Re 14:9-10
- The beast and false prophet ..... Re 19:20
- The devil ..... Re 20:10
- Death and Hades..... Re 20:14
- Those not in book of life ..... Re 20:15
- Cowardly, unbelieving, vile, murderers, sexually immoral,  
magic arts, idolaters, liars..... Re 21:8

## **I. OTHER TOPICS OF IMPORTANCE**

### **TABLE OF CONTENTS - THIS SECTION**

#### **11. TEN COMMANDMENTS**

#### **12. DIVINE HEALING OF THE BODY**

#### **13. MARY - MOTHER OF JESUS**

#### **14. NAME OF JESUS**

### **1. TEN COMMANDMENTS**

#### **a) INTENTION OF COMMANDMENTS IS LOVE**

- Love the Lord God ..... Mt 22:37-40
  - > commandments 1- 4 ..... Ex 20:1-11
- Love your neighbor as yourself..... Mt 22:37-40; Ro 13:9
  - > commandments 5-10 ..... Ex 20:12-17 - The LOVE  
chapter ..... ICol 3:1-8

#### **b) PURPOSE OF THE LAW**

- To give us the knowledge of sin..... Ro 3:20,7:7
- Law as a prison to constrain us ..... Ga 3:23
- Law as a teacher or guardian ..... Ga 4:1-5
- Law made nothing perfect ..... Heb 7:19
- Sacrifice of Jesus did what Law was unable to do ..... Ro 8:3-4
  - > we are to live a life led by the Spirit of God rather than living by the law  
..... Ro 8:13-14

#### **c) THE TEN COMMANDMENTS**

- Disobedience comes from our own hearts ..... Mk 7:21- 23; Ro 1:28-32
- #1. No other gods ..... Ex 20:3; De5:7
  - > the very beginning of our relationship with God
  - > Jesus refers to #1 during His temptation ..... Mt 4:10
- #2. Against making and worshiping idols ..... Ex 20:4-6; De 5:8-10
  - > God is a Spirit, not an object..... Joh 4:24
  - > worship Creator, not creature..... Ro 1:25
- #3. Not to misuse God's Name ..... Ex 20:7; De 5:11
  - > importance of the Name Jesus ..... Php 2:9-11
- #4. Remember the sabbath day ..... Ex 20:8-11; De 5:12-15
  - > some honour one day, some all days ..... Ro 14:5-8
  - > Israel kept the Sabbath BUT

- never entered God's Rest ..... Heb 3:7-11; Ps 95:7-11
  - > God desires a believing heart ..... Heb 3:12,19
  - > unable to enter Sabbath Rest by works;
- faith in God, not self, is needed ..... Heb 4:1-3
  - > importance is to rest from our own works,
- not to keep a special day ..... Heb 4:8-11
- #5. Honour father and mother ..... Ex 20:12; De 5:16
  - > first commandment with a promise ..... Eph 6:2
  - > example of our love for God the Father ..... Mal 1:6
  - > Pharisees & teachers tried to use #1 to
- disobey #5, wicked hearts ..... Mt 15:1-6 - #6. Do not murder  
..... Ex 20:13; De 5:17
  - > does not refer to animals ..... Ge 9:1-3
  - > hate is like murder ..... Mt 5:21-22
- #7. Do not commit adultery ..... Ex 20:14; De 5:18
  - > adultery is a work of unredeemed flesh ..... Ga 5:19
  - > Marriage typified Christ and the Church ..... Eph 5:22-33
  - > Jesus' teaching about adultery ..... Mt 5:27-28
  - > Jesus' teaching about divorce ..... Mt 5:31-32; Section G9
- #8. Do not steal..... Ex 20:15; De 5:19 > rather work  
in order to give ..... Eph 4:28
- #9. Do not give false testimony ..... Ex 20:16; De 5:20 > Satan misuses  
Word of God ..... Ge 3:1-3 > it is impossible for God to lie  
..... Heb 6:18
  - > no liars in the New Jerusalem ..... Re 21:27
- #10. Do not covet ..... Ex 20:17; De 5:21
  - > we should try to please our neighbor ..... Ro 15:2
  - > be content whatever our circumstances..... Php 4:11

## 2. DIVINE HEALING OF THE BODY

### a) GOD'S VIEW OF HEALING

- Healing the sick is God's work ..... Joh9:1-4
  - Healing the sick is for the glory of God ..... Joh 11:4
  - It is good to heal the sick ..... Mt 12:10-12
  - Jesus was willing to heal the sick ..... Mt 8:3,7
  - Jesus gave the power to heal to the disciples ..... Mt 10:1
  - The Righteous die, some of sicknesses ..... 2Ki 13:14 > so don't lose faith if  
some are not healed
- ### b) PROMISED BY GOD
- Protection provided by obedience to God ..... Ex 15:26
  - Wisdom from God is health to the whole body ..... Pr 4:20-22
    - > especially guard your heart ..... Pr 4:23
  - Through Jesus (by His stripes we are healed) ..... Isa 53:5; IPe 2:24

### c) CAUSES OF SICKNESS

- Problems on earth because of Adam's sin ..... Ge 3:16-19
  - > all creation groans because of the curse..... Ro 8:22
  - > people also are waiting for redeemed bodies ..... Ro 8:23
- Sickness as Judgment of God
  - > caused by disobedience ..... Le 26:15-16
  - > caused by rebellion ..... Ps 107:17-18
- Sickness as a Trial from God at the hand of Satan
  - > Job's body is afflicted ..... Job 2:6-7
  - > God is proving Job's love and loyalty ..... Job 2:3-5
  - > Paul was sick due to messenger of Satan ..... 2Co 12:7
  - > the righteous suffer - Old Testament ..... 2Ki 20:1-3; Da 8:27
- New Testament ..... Ac 9:37; Php 2:27
- d) MEANS OF HEALING**
- See Spiritual Gifts ..... Section F11
  - > see Jesus ..... Section B9
  - > see Disciples ..... Section F11
- Through prayer..... Ge 20:17; 2Ki 20:5; Jas 5:16; Ac 28:8
- By laying on of hands, or touch ..... Mt 14:36; Mk 3:10; 5:23; 6:5; Lu 4:40; 6:19; 8:47; 22:51; Ac 28:8
- Tree of Life for continual healing.....Re 22:2
- Physicians mentioned - Old Testament..... Ge 50:2; 2Ch 16:12; Jer 8:22
- New Testament..... Mt 9:12; Mk 2:17; Lu 4:23,5:31
- e) CONDITIONS FOR HEALING**
- Do you want to get well? ..... Joh 5:6
- Forgiveness of sins ..... Mt 9:5-6
  - > forgive others so we will be forgiven ..... Mt 6:14; Mk 11:25
  - > confess your sins ..... Jas 5:15-16; IJo 1:9
  - > repentance leads to healing ..... Ps 107:19-20
- Faith is necessary..... Ac 14:9; Mt 9:28-29
- Authority from Jesus is necessary ..... Lu9:1 - Prayer and fasting may be necessary ..... Mt 17:21
- f) WHY SOME ARE NOT HEALED**
- God's choice is not man's choice ..... Lu 4:27 > Jesus heals only one man at Bethesda ..... Joh 5:2-10
  - > God chooses whom He wishes ..... Joh 5:21
- Unbelief or lack of Faith ..... Mt 13:58,17:20; Mk 6:5-6
- Miracle lost because of doubt (Peter on water)..... Mt 14:31
- Don't ask; don't receive ..... Jas 4:2; Mt 21:22; Joh 16:23-24
  - > some ask for selfish reasons ..... Jas 4:3 g)
- ANOINTING WITH OIL (2 New Testament Scriptures)**

- Before the coming of Holy Spirit ..... Mk6:13
- James to Jewish believers ..... Jas1:1;5:14
- No reference to Jesus and the disciples (in the Book of Acts) using oil. Oil is a symbol of healing. Some are helped by being anointed with oil when a healing prayer is offered.

### **3. MARY-MOTHER OF JESUS**

#### **a) CHOSEN OF GOD**

Mary is special in that she is the mother of Jesus. But the Bible does not honour her more greatly than other chosen servants of God.

- Angel Gabriel appeared to Mary ..... Lu 1:26,27
  - > Gabriel also appeared to Daniel ..... Da8:16; 9:21 >
- Gabriel also appeared to Zacharias..... Lu 1:19 - Mary is called "highly favored of God" ..... Lu 1:28
  - > Daniel is also called "highly favored of God" ..... Da 10:11
- There are several "Marys" in the Bible. It is Mary, the sister of Lazarus and of Martha, whom Jesus honors by saying "... wherever this gospel is preached throughout the world, what she has done will also be told, in memory of her".... Mt 26:13; Mk 14:9
- b) VIRGINITY
- Virgin at the time of the birth of Jesus ..... Lu 1:27; Mt 1:23
  - > Joseph had no union with Mary before Jesus' birth..... Mt 1:25
  - > Joseph had union with Mary after Jesus' birth ..... Mt 1:25
- Mary and Joseph had many children
  - > sons: James, Joseph, Simon & Judas ..... Mt 13:55
  - > James the Lord's brother..... Ga 1:19
  - > Jesus' mother and brothers ..... Mt 12:46-47; Mk 3:31-32
  - > Jesus' mother and brothers and sisters ..... Mt 13:55-56
  - > Jesus' mother and brothers and disciples ..... Joh 2:12
  - > Jesus' brothers didn't believe Him ..... Joh 7:5 > after resurrection His brothers believed ..... ICo 9:5

#### **c) JESUS' RELATIONSHIP WITH MARY, HIS MOTHER**

- Obedient to Mary & Joseph as a child ..... Lu 2:51
- Calls her "Woman" ..... Joh2:4; 19:26 - Puts her into His best friend's care ..... Joh 19:26

#### **d) MARY'S RELATIONSHIP WITH JESUS**

- She followed Jesus.....Mt 27:55,56
  - > for dear identification see ..... Mt 13:55 - She waits with the disciples for the Holy Spirit ..... Ac 1:14

#### **e) CHARACTER OF MARY**

- Submissive to God and His will for her ..... Lu 1:38
- Believed the word of God (faith) ..... Lu 1:46-55
- Pure, virgin before Jesus' birth ..... Lu 1:27 - A worshiper of God ..... Lu 1:46

#### **f) CONCLUSIONS ABOUT MARY**

- Mary was a wonderful, virtuous, obedient woman who loved God and should be respected and appreciated.
- Mary was chosen by God for the most honorable duty of giving birth to Jesus, Who according to the flesh comes from Mary and according to the Spirit, He comes from God. It is not correct to call Mary "the mother of God." It is proper to say that she is the mother of the man, Jesus.
- Mary followed/obeyed Jesus, the same as all the other believers..... John 2:5 - Mary waited for the promise of Jesus, the Holy Spirit, along with the other believers.... Ac 1:14 - No further mention is made of Mary the mother of Jesus after Pentecost.

The wise men worship Jesus; they do not worship Mary..... Mt 2:11

- We are told that all we do in word and deed should be done in the Name of Jesus ..... Col 3:17; Mk 9:39; Lu 2:21; Joh 10:25,20:31; Ac 2:38,3:6,4:10, 4:18,4:30,5:40,8:12,8:16,9:27,9:29,16:18,19:5,19:13,19:17,21:13, 26:9; ICo 5:4,6:11; Eph 5:20; Php 2:10; Col 3:17; 2Th 1:12,3:6; IJo 3:23. There are no Bible verses which tell us to worship Mary, to pray to Mary, or to ask her to intercede for us or to do anything in Mary's name.

#### **4. NAME OF JESUS**

##### **a) NAMES AND TITLES GIVEN TO JESUS**

- Jesus... (Jehovah is salvation) ..... Mt 1:21
- Emmanuel... (God with us) ..... Mt 1:23
- Christ... (Anointed one, Messiah)..... Mt 1:17
- Potentate... (Ruler)...(Mighty Prince) ..... ITi 6:15
- King of kings and Lord of lords ..... ITi6:15;Re 19:16
- Lord Jesus..... Ac 8:16
- Lord Jesus Christ ..... Eph 5:20
- God ..... Joh 1:1,14
- Son of God ..... IJo 5:13; Joh 3:18
- Word ..... Joh1:1,14
- Jesus Christ..... Mt 1:1
- Word of God..... Re 19:13
- Wonderful Counselor ..... Isa9:6
- Mighty God ..... Isa9:6
- Everlasting Father ..... Isa9:6
- Last Adam..... ICo 15:45
- Prince of Peace ..... Isa9:6
- Bridegroom..... Mt 9:15
- Chief Shepherd ..... IPe5:4
- Lamb of God ..... Joh 1:29
- Chief Cornerstone ..... IPe 2:6-7
- Son of man ..... Mt8:20
- Way, Truth & Life ..... Joh 14:6
- Light.....Joh8:12
- Living Bread ..... Joh 6:51
- Living Stone ..... IPe2:4
- Lion of Judah ..... Re5:5
- Mediator ..... 1Ti 2:5
- Priest ..... Heb6:20
- Savior ..... Lu 2:11
- Descendant of David ..... 2Ti 2:8
- and many others

##### **b) SIGNIFICANCE OF THE NAME OF JESUS**

- It's the Name above every name ..... Php 2:9
  - > every one will acknowledge Jesus as Lord ..... Php 2:10-11
- God's commandment is to believe in Jesus' Name ..... IJo 3:23 - Church is identified as those who call on Jesus' Name ..... ICo 1:2

- Everything we do should be in Jesus' Name ..... Col 3:17
  - > Peter preached baptism in Jesus' Name..... Ac 2:38
  - > see also Baptism ..... Section G2
  - > lame man healed in Jesus' Name..... Ac 3:6; 4:10
  - > our salvation is in the Name of Jesus ..... Ac 4:12
  - > miracles are done in Jesus' Name ..... Mk 9:39; Ac 4:30
  - > Paul preached in the Name of Jesus ..... Ac 9:27-29
  - > Philip preached Kingdom of God and Jesus' Name ..... Ac 8:12
  - > Paul & Barnabas hazarded their lives for Jesus' Name..... Ac 15:25-26
  - > Paul was ready to die for the Name of Jesus ..... Ac 21:13
  - > Paul admonished and corrected in the Name of Jesus..... I Co 1:10; 5:4
  - > we are washed, sanctified & justified in Jesus' Name..... I Co 6:11
  - > we thank God & the Father in Jesus' Name ..... Eph5:20
  - > evil spirits cast out in Jesus' Name ..... Ac 16:18
- > even unbelievers used Jesus' Name ..... Ac 19:13 c) **OPPOSITION TO JESUS' NAME**
- Jesus came in His Father's Name but was not received..... Joh 5:43
- Sanhedrin forbade disciples to teach in Jesus' Name ..... Ac 4:18; 5:40
- Saul fought against the Name of Jesus ..... Ac 26:9-12
- False Christs will come in His Name ..... Mt 24:5; Mk 13:6; Lu 21:8

## Section A

### LEADERS BASIC TRAINING

#### **A1: How To Train Church Leaders**

A1.1 Training Leaders

#### **A2: Training Leaders To Do Nine Things**

Preface

A2.1 - Wait On The Lord

A2.2 - Hear God's Voice A2.3 - Obey

God's Voice

A2.4 - Patiently Endure

A2.5 - Learn From Joseph's Life A2.6 -

Avoid Becoming A Casualty A2.7 -

"Flee Fornication!" A2.8 - Reject

Covetousness / Idolatry A2.9 - Receive The  
Triple Anointing

#### **A3: The Use And Abuse Of Authority**

A3.1 -Abuse Of Authority

A3.2 - Limits Of Authority

A3.3 - Leaders Worthy Of Following

#### **A4: Establishing A Devotional Habit**

A4.1 - The Renewal Of Devotional Habit

A4.2 - Thanksgiving And Praise (Offering Up Yourself)

A4.3 - Confession And Cleansing (Offering Up Your Heart)

A4.4 - Order And Obedience (Offering Up Your Day)

A4.5 - Family And Church (Offering Up Those Near And Dear)

A4.6 - Intercession In Reaching The World For Jesus

A4.7 - Countries And Nations (Offering Up The Whole World)

**A5: How To Be A Prayer Warrior** A5.1 - Why Does God Ask  
Us To Pray To Him?

A5.2 - The Breastplate And Scepter Of Righteousness

A5.3 - Power In Prayer By Praying In The Spirit

A5.4 - Using Tongues And Interpretation In Prayer

A5.5 - Praying By Prophecy

A5.6- Forming A Prophetic-Prayer Team

## SECTION A1

### HOW TO TRAIN CHURCH LEADERS

By Ralph Mahoney

## Chapter 1 Training Leaders

### Introduction

There are THREE GREAT HINDRANCES to spreading the gospel. These obstruct the evangelization of those who have never heard the good news about what Jesus Christ has done to save and bless all nations. These are:

- CLERICALISM
- PNEUMATOLOGY  
DEFICIENCIES
- CATHEDRAL BUILDING

In this section, *How To Train Church Leaders*, you will learn how to overcome CLERICALISM. The other two are dealt with in subsequent sections. If you follow the biblical alternative to "Clericalism," you will be effective in helping Jesus build His Church. 2,500,000 Israelites followed Moses out of Egypt into the wilderness. The severe deficiencies of Moses' leadership style illustrate CLERICALISM.

*"And it came to pass on the morrow, that Moses sat to judge the people: and the people stood by Moses from the morning unto the evening.*

*"And when Moses' father-in-law saw all that he did..., he said, What is this...**why do you sit judging the people without others to help... ?***

*"And Moses said unto his father-in-law, Because the people come unto me to inquire of God: When they have a matter, they come unto me; and I judge between one and another, and I teach them the statutes of God, and his laws.*

*"And Moses' father-in-law said unto him, **The thing that you do is not good.** You will surely wear away, both you, and this people...: for this thing is too heavy for you; **you are not able to perform it by yourself alone.***

*"Do what I say, I will give you counsel, and God shall be with you: bring the causes [needs] of the people unto God:*

*"And teach the people God's ordinances and laws, and show them the way wherein they must walk, and the work that they must do.*

*"In addition, choose out of all the people able men, such as fear God, men of truth, hating covetousness; and place such over them, to be rulers of thousands, and rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens:*

*"And let them judge the people at all seasons: and it shall be, that every difficult matter they shall bring unto you, but every simple matter they shall judge: so shall it be easier for you, and they shall bear the burden with you" (Exo 18:13-22).*

Clericalism is trying to do the work God has called you to accomplish, by yourself, without the counsel or help of others. Clericalism is placing yourself OVER others instead of seeing yourself as the servant of others. *"And whosoever will be chief among you, let him be your servant: But he that is greatest among you shall be your servant"* (Matt 20:27;23:11). Those who stay in the trap of Clericalism will fail to fulfill the true purpose of a church leader.

Clericalism can only be solved by using the principles of multiplying ministry utilized by Jesus and the Apostle Paul in the New Testament.

The solution to clericalism is to build a team. Invest your time and resources in the team. Let the team help you with the work God has called you to do.

You will succeed in team-building if you follow the principles given to Moses by God and his father-in-law, Jethro. Without these, Moses would have failed. Without them, you will fail as a church leader.

We will examine the five principles given to Moses. In these, we will find our solution to the problem of Clericalism.

## **A. FIVE PRINCIPLES GIVEN TO MOSES**

### **1. Train Others To Help**

*"I am not able to bear all this people alone, because it is too heavy for me. And if thou deal thus with me, kill me, I pray thee..."* (Num. 11:14,15).

Moses was asking God to kill him because of the problems resulting from clericalism. Clericalism was killing Moses.

It will kill you!

To help him with this problem, God was talking to Moses (Numbers 11). In Exodus 18, Jethro (Moses' father-in-law) was also talking to Moses and saying the same thing.

When Moses listened to God and Jethro, here is what he found out.

The solution to his problem began with training others.

*"And the LORD said unto Moses, Gather unto me seventy men... whom thou knowest to be the elders of the people, and officers over them..."* (Num 11:16).

*"In addition, choose out of all the people able men, such as fear God, men of truth, hating covetousness; and place such over them, to be rulers of thousands, and rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens: And let them judge the people at all seasons: with you..."* (Exo 18:21,22).

The scripture verses which follow teach us that the leadership gifts were given to the Church to train the members to do the work of the ministry. This was the purpose of Moses' ministry. He just didn't know it.

The leader's job is to train and equip the members of the church who have leadership potential.

These members would then do the work of the ministry.

*"When Jesus ascended up to heaven...He gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers; For training and equipping the saints, so the members of the church would do the work of the ministry, and thus build up the body of Christ spiritually and numerically..."* (Eph 4:10-12pph).

**a. Each One — Teach One.** Paul teaches in the above verses that the primary purpose of a church leader is to train others.

Paul explained this to young Timothy. His job as a church leader was to train others. He was to take the training he received from Paul and pass it on to other faithful men. These in turn were also to teach still other faithful men.

*"And the things that you have heard of me among many witnesses, the same commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also "* (2Tim 2:2). Following Paul's principle of training others would set off a chain reaction of multiplication that would cause the gospel to be spread quickly over the whole world.

If each one would teach one, at the end of 33 years, more people would be trained than the population of the world. If we would do things the Bible way, we would experience biblical results.

*"And there went great multitudes with him... And believers were the more added to the Lord, multitudes both of men and women"* (Luke 14:25, Acts 5:14). This is God's desire, for multitudes to follow Jesus.

*"After this I beheld, and, lo, a **great multitude**, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes..."* (Rev 7:9). Yes! The Lord wants multitudes saved. *"The Lord...is...not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance"* (2Pet 3:9). He has given us principles to insure this result.

**b. Fruit That Remains.** In 1959 the author was ministering in the country of Nicaragua, Central America. The question was asked an elderly and wise church leader: "How were you able to plant five hundred churches in Central America in thirty years?" In response he told the following story. "I went to Guatemala in 1929 as a missionary. Immediately I set out to visit villages where no born-again believers could be found. I preached and healed the sick for six nights. Every night I invited the sinners to come and receive forgiveness from Jesus or their sins. Many came every night.

"I would baptize the new believers in water and go on to the next village, to repeat the process. I thought I was winning about one hundred souls to Christ every week. That is the number I was baptizing.

"I would write to my home church who supported me and tell the story of all my success. It was unbelievable! I was winning over five-thousand souls each year to Christ. "After two years and one hundred village crusades, I decided to go back and visit all these villages a second time. "I went to the first village and to my amazement, all my converts had become 'reverts' — they had all reverted back to their pagan practices and were not living their lives by the Bible. There were no church meetings and no one leading or teaching the new believers. Those I had left in charge had not continued to follow Christ.

"I went to the second and third, the fourth and fifth village. It was the same in every one. My heart was broken. What I thought had been two years of successful ministry had produced no **remaining** fruit.

"The words of Jesus were ringing in my ears:

*"You have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit, and that your fruit should **remain**..."* (John 15:16).

"I had no remaining fruit. What must I do? I set my heart to seek the Lord with a time of fasting and prayer. During that time the Lord spoke clearly to me. He said, 'I have not sent you to evangelize Central America by yourself. I sent you to train others.'

"The Lord showed me two important principles. **First:** Train others to take leadership responsibility! **Second:** Work where God is working!

"I immediately set about organizing a Bible School training course of six months' duration. About fifty students came and completed the first course.

"Shortly after that, I heard reports from the jungle areas of miracles of healing taking place. People were having visions of Jesus and as a result of the healing miracles, were being converted by the scores.

"Then I remembered. '**Work where God is working.**' Immediately we took the trained workers to that area. A great harvest of souls resulted. The trained workers started churches in each of the villages and cared for and taught the new believers. This produced 'remaining

fruit.' "I have followed those two principles since 1931: (1) Train others and (2) work where God is working!

"Today we have five Short-term Bible Training Institutes in which over a thousand workers have been trained. The five hundred churches are the remaining fruit of those Central American young people we trained. They went out to the places where we heard God was working. We worked with God and great fruitfulness resulted." By 1989 (30 years after I first met that dear missionary) that Central American church movement had grown to several thousand churches.

**c. Find The Leaders.** And the LORD said unto Moses, "*Gather unto me seventy men... whom thou knowest to be the elders of the people, and officers over them...*" (Num 11:16).

A lot of time and effort is wasted training those with no leadership gift. The Lord's instruction was clear, "*Gather... seventy men... whom thou knowest to be elders [leaders]...*"

How can you recognize a leader? Observe how many followers there are. If no one is following, you do not have a leader.

When you go out to the field to bring in a herd of fifty dairy cows to be milked — you only have to find the "lead cow." If you start her toward the milking-barn, the rest will follow. So it is with leaders of people. You must find men and women others will follow, and train them.

This is what Jesus did. "*And it came to pass in those days, that he went out into a mountain to pray, and continued all night in prayer to God.*

*"And when it was day, he called unto him his disciples: and of them he chose twelve, whom also he named Apostles... And he came down with them..."* (Luke 6:12,13, 17).

Jesus spent most of His time preparing the twelve apostles to carry on His ministry. He followed this principle of training others — who would teach others also. That is the ministry of leaders — finding more leaders and training them.

## **2. Teach Them The Bible**

What training should we give church leaders? "*And teach the people God's ordinances and laws...*" (Exo 18:20).

Those familiar with Church Seminaries and Bible Schools are acutely aware that most teach every subject but the Bible. The Theological Seminaries too frequently become "Cemeteries" — where hundreds of potential church leaders' spiritual life is buried.

A basic choice was presented Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden:

*"...the tree of life also in the midst of the garden, and the tree of knowledge..."* Gen 2:9). Eating the fruit of the tree of knowledge would produce sin and death. Despite this biblical warning, the Church returns continually to this tree for the training programs.

What is the result? The Apostle Paul put it simply: "*Knowledge puffeth up, but love edifieth*" (1Cor 8:1).

Training programs that do not use THE BIBLE as the primary reference work produce arrogant, spiritually dead, impotent leaders whose only achievement after graduation is to pastor a church that gets smaller every year.

That which has no life cannot and will not grow. The tree of knowledge only produces death.

*"Jesus answered and said unto them, Ye are in error, because you do not know the scriptures..."* (Matt 22:29). The Scriptures keep us from error and produce life. *"...the flesh profiteth nothing: the words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life "* (John 6:63).

It is the words of God the Father and God the Son (Jesus) recorded in the Bible that bring life to us.

*"Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life..."* (Rev 22:14).

a. **Academic Achievement Is Not The Goal.** Training programs based in intellectual achievement with emphasis on academic degrees will not produce the leadership needed to win lost souls to Christ or build growing churches. The greater emphasis on academics, the less capable the leadership. Teach the Bible. Train church leaders in the Bible. Let the Bible be the center of your training curriculum.

The question was asked about Jesus, *"...How knoweth this man letters, having never learned?"* (John 7:15).

The Jews marveled at Jesus' knowledge of the Scripture because they knew Jesus had no academic credential to commend Him to the religious or secular world. We should learn from this example. Academic achievement is not the goal. Knowledge of the Scriptures and the power of God is what the church leader needs (Matt 22:29).

b. **Look For "Leader-Laborers".** The early apostles were not known for their academic achievement. *'Now when they saw the boldness of Peter and John, and perceived that they were unlearned and ignorant men, they marveled: and they took knowledge of them, that they had been with Jesus'* (Acts 4:13).

Not one of Jesus' apostles graduated from the Theological Seminary of the Pharisees or Sadducees. His standard for church leaders was this: *"The harvest truly is great, but the laborers are few: pray ye therefore the Lord of the harvest, that he would send forth laborers into his harvest"* (Luke 10:2). The effective church leader is one who has proven he knows how to work hard. He has callouses on his hands. He has learned the discipline of strenuous productive labor. By contrast, the Seminary graduate is often arrogant, too proud to work, lazy and unproductive. Such are not fit to represent Him Who washed His disciples' feet. *"If I then, your Lord and Master, have washed your feet; ye also ought to wash one another's feet"* (John 13:14). Find a "leader-laborer" and you will usually have a productive church leader.

That is why Jesus chose fishermen like Peter and John, professional people like Matthew the publican and Luke the physician. They had practical skills and knew how to work hard. Such can be taught the Bible and be fruitful leaders.

### **3. Show Them The Work To Do**

*"... and show them the way wherein they must walk, and the work that they must do"* (Exo 18:20). The Apostle Luke began the Book of Acts with these words: *"The former treatise have I made... of all that Jesus began both to do and teach"* (Acts 1:1).

a. Get Them Involved. It is not enough to teach the trainee. The trainer must immediately involve the student in DOING the TEACHING!

If you teach the student "soul-winning" — then immediately send them out to win souls. If you teach them how to heal the sick and cast out devils, immediately send them out to do this. That is what Jesus did.

*"And when he had called unto him his twelve disciples, he gave them power against unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all manner of sickness and all manner of disease.*

*"These twelve Jesus sent forth, and commanded them, saying... And as ye go, preach, saying, 'The kingdom of heaven is at hand. Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out devils: freely ye have received, freely give'"*(Matt. 10:1-8).

*"Then he called his twelve disciples together, and gave them power and authority over all devils, and to cure diseases. And he sent them to preach the kingdom of God, and to heal the*

sick. And they departed, and went through the towns, preaching the gospel, and healing everywhere" (Luke 9:1,2,6).

"After these things the Lord appointed other seventy also, and sent them two and two before his face into every city and place, whither he himself would come.

"Go your ways: behold, I send you forth as lambs among wolves.

"And into whatsoever city ye enter... heal the sick that are therein, and say unto them. The kingdom of God is come nigh unto you.

"And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, Lord, even the devils are subject unto us through thy name.

"And he said unto them, I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven.

"Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you.

"In that hour Jesus rejoiced in spirit. and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes: even so, Father; for so it seemed good in thy sight" (excerpts from Luke 10:1-21).

**b. Short-Term Training Is Best.** Note that the training was short-term with both the twelve apostles and the seventy disciples that Jesus commissioned. He demonstrated what they should do, and then sent them out to do the same things He did. "Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father " (John 14:12).

The longer the training program, the less effective the graduates. Training should be kept to six months maximum — then the trainees should be sent out full time to do the work. If necessary, they can be brought back for further training a year or two later.

**c. Keep It Practical.** The short-term training should be 50 percent TEACHING and 50 percent DOING. What is taught should be immediately put into practice (doing).

Don't train the head, train the hands. Keep the emphasis on Practics (practical training).

The author has spent much of the last thirty years traveling in over one hundred nations of the world. He has observed the training programs that produce good results and those training programs that produce no (or negative) results.

The Church in three nations is getting outstanding results. These are Korea, Brazil and Chile. In these nations, the above principles are being utilized. The churches are exploding in growth and the leaders are very successful in winning thousands of people to Christ.

The training is Bible-centered, short-term and practical. Academics are not emphasized. Dedication and commitment to Christ, purity of character and an emphasis on practical training (immediately doing what is taught) — these are the commonalities of the training programs in these three countries. It is biblically based — and yields biblical results.

#### **4. Transfer The Anointing**

"And the LORD said unto Moses, Gather unto me seventy men of the elders of Israel... and bring them unto the tabernacle of the congregation, that they may stand there with thee.

"And... and I will take of the spirit which is upon thee, and will put it upon them; and they shall bear the burden of the people with thee, that thou bear it not thyself alone" (Num 11:16,17).

**a. The Anointing Is Essential.** This is probably the most important (but most neglected) principle in leadership development.

Without the power of the Holy Spirit (the anointing) coming upon the leader, he has no chance of succeeding. **Jesus never sent anyone to represent Him that He did not first empower.**

*"Then he called his twelve disciples together, and gave them power and authority over all devils, and to cure diseases "* (Luke 9:1).

*"After these things the Lord appointed other seventy also... And he said unto them... Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you" (Luke 10:1,18,19).*

*"And, being assembled together with them, commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father, which, saith he, ye have heard of me. "For John truly baptized in water; but ye shall be baptized in the Holy Spirit not many days hence "* (Acts 1:4,5).

*"But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth" (Acts 1:8).*

Jesus did not begin His ministry until the Spirit of the Lord descended upon Him at His Baptism in water by John the Baptist (see Matthew 3:16; Mark 1:10; John 1:32).

Jesus began His ministry by saying: *"The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised. To preach a year of liberation [or Jubilee]" (Luke 4:18,19 — cf. Leviticus 25:1-54).*

The anointing was essential for Jesus to fulfil His ministry (as outlined in the preceding verses). It likewise is essential for you.

Jesus **commanded** His disciples that they should *"be baptized in the Holy Spirit"* (Acts 1:5). Paul commanded *"...be not drunk with wine, wherein is excess; but be filled with the Spirit"* (Eph5:18).

See the section of the **Leaders Training Guide** that deals with *"The Baptism In The Holy Spirit"* for more teaching on this vital subject.

**b. Anointed Leaders Should Train Others.** Let us not miss the vital principle involved in the above scriptures. The key leader was anointed and passed his anointing on to those he trained. In contrast to this, the author has noted that often the training Seminaries are staffed by those who failed in the ministry. Those who went out to pastor a church or to evangelize and failed in the process, are often brought to the Seminary to train those with leadership potential. Such an approach is doomed to produce others who fail.

The law of Harvest found in the Bible is clear. *"And the earth brought forth grass, and herb yielding seed after his kind, and the tree yielding fruit, whose seed was in itself, after his kind... "And God created great whales, and every living creature that moveth, which the waters brought forth abundantly, after their kind..."(Gen 1:12,21).*

We reproduce what we are. If failed leaders train, their students will be failures. Successful leaders, who carry a strong anointing of the Holy Spirit on their lives, should be involved in the training of leadership. They will reproduce others who will carry a strong anointing and be successful.

This was true of those Moses trained. God said, *"And... I will take of the spirit which is upon thee, and will put it upon them..." (Num 11:17).*

This was true of Elijah and Elisha. *"Elijah said unto Elisha, Ask what I shall do for you, before I be taken away from you. And Elisha said, I pray you, let a double portion of your spirit be upon me.*

*"And he said, You have asked a hard thing: nevertheless, if you see me when lam taken from you, it shall be so unto you... "And it came to pass... there appeared a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, and parted them both asunder; and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven.*

*"And Elisha saw it, and he cried, My father, my father, the chariot of Israel, and the horsemen thereof.*

*"He took up also the mantle of Elijah that fell from him, and went back, and stood by the bank of Jordan... and smote the waters, and said. Where is the LORD God of Elijah? And when he also had smitten the waters, they parted... and Elisha went over.*

*"And when the sons of the prophets which were to view at Jericho saw him, they said, **The spirit [anointing] of Elijah doth rest on Elisha**" (2Ki 2:9-15).*

This was true of Jesus and His disciples. *"The Comforter... is the Holy Spirit..."* (John 14:26).

*"But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father..."* (John 15:26).

*"Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you "* (John 16:7).

**c. Anointing Is Shared.** The anointing transferred from Moses to the leaders who were to share in his ministry. The anointing transferred from Elijah to Elisha who was to share his ministry. The anointing transferred from Jesus to His disciples who were to share in His ministry.

The same principle still holds. The trainee shares in the anointing of the trainer. Hence, those who do the training should be those who carry the strong power of God upon their lives. The laws of Harvest will work. They will bring forth after their kind.

I knew an evangelist who had a dynamic miracle-healing ministry for the peoples of Asia, Africa and Latin America. I noticed that in almost every nation in which he ministered, the one who served as his interpreter would have the same anointing (ministry) as this evangelist. Two weeks of working with the evangelist caused the anointing to transfer. After the evangelist left, the interpreter would carry on in the spirit and power of the evangelist.

**d. Who Transfers The Anointing?** *God said, "And... I will take of the spirit which is upon thee, and will put it upon them..."* (Num 11:17).

It is under the guidance and sovereignty of God that this takes place. God is the One Who chooses the recipients and directs the key leadership in this blessed transfer.

*"And no man taketh this honor unto himself, but he that is called of God, as was Aaron"* (Heb 5:4). It is by divine appointment.

It seems in the early Church, they spent times of fasting, prayer and ministry to the Lord so a proper atmosphere was created in which God could speak (Acts 1:14; 13:1-3). Out of such times, the Holy Spirit came. The anointing came. The workers went out empowered by the Spirit and successfully fulfilled their ministries.

May we clear those steps to the Upper Room once again and pray and press into God's presence until the power of the Spirit comes. Then we will be ready to go forth proclaiming and proving the resurrection of Jesus.

*"And with great power gave the apostles witness of the resurrection of the Lord Jesus: and great grace was upon them all"* (Acts 4:33).

For further study on the anointing, see Section A2.9, **Receive The Triple Anointing**, in the **Leaders Training Guide**.

## **5. Transfer The Burden**

*"And the LORD said unto Moses, Gather unto me... the elders of Israel... that they may stand... with thee. And... they shall bear the burden of the people with thee..."* (Num 11:16, 17).

If you see a man reaching for responsibility, promote him! That man will be a blessing to the Lord's work. If you see a man reaching for authority, be on guard! That man will damage the work of the Lord.

**a. Leadership Is Not Lordship.** *"Feed the flock of God... Neither as being lords over God's heritage, but being examples to the flock"* (I Pet 5:3).

God made mankind to exercise dominion (see Genesis 1:26). For this reason, in the heart of most men there is the desire to rule.

Ruling according to the biblical model is quite different from the way most leaders in the world exercise their authority. Hence we need to understand the Bible model for leadership.

Using dominion as Jesus did was legitimate. *"...I do always those things that please the Father"* (John 8:29). He used His leadership position to teach, bless, heal, break bondages, cast out demons, forgive sins and heal the broken-hearted (see Luke 4:18). All this pleased His heavenly Father.

*"For even the Son of man came not to be served, but to serve, and to give his life a ransom for many"* (Mark 10:45). Jesus did not exercise dominion as a self-serving dictator. Jesus saw His role as a servant ruler.

His disciples did not understand this. They thought leadership would mean a high position in which they would receive praise and honor.

*"Then came to him the mother of Zebedee's children with her sons, worshipping him, and desiring a special request of him.*

*"And he said unto her, What do you want? She said unto him, Grant that these my two sons may sit, the one on your right hand, and the other on the left, in your kingdom. "Jesus replied, ...Ye know that the princes of the Gentiles exercise dominion **over** them, and they that are great exercise authority **upon** them. But it shall not be so among you: but whosoever will be great among you, let him be your servant;*

*"And whosoever will be chief among you, let him be your slave: Even as the Son of man came not to be served, but to serve, and to give his life a ransom for many"* (Matt 20:20-28). The Lord did not want His apostles ruling OVER. Rather He wanted them serving UNDER the people, bent low, washing their feet — like a lowly slave. *"If I then, your Lord and Master, have washed your feet; ye also ought to wash one another's feet"* (John 13:14).

The Apostle Paul affirmed this in his writings. *"But now in Christ Jesus ye... are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone"* (Eph2:13,20).

This teaches us the leadership (apostles and prophets) are foundational ministries in the church. The foundation of a building is under it, in a supportive role —not over it, dominating and holding it under dominion.

The 'chief cornerstone' was the topstone (or head-stone) in the pyramid. This place is reserved for Jesus alone. He alone has any right to rule in the church as the 'chief cornerstone.'

Any church leader who tries to take the place of Jesus is in danger of operating as an 'anti-christ.' In the New Testament, the Greek word for 'anti-christ' not only means 'against Christ' but in some passages 'in the place of Christ.' Those trained for leadership must understand this important principle.

Centuries before Christ, the Israelites tried to make their deliverer, Gideon, a king. He wisely responded, *"...I will not rule over you, neither shall my son rule over you: the LORD shall rule over you"* (Judg 8:23).

1) The Parable of Jotham. I recommend you read the parable of Jotham (a relative of Gideon) in Judges 9:7- 21.

In his parable, none of the 'fruit-bearing trees' or vines would accept the summons to rule over the people. Only the thorny, fruitless 'bramble bush' responded to the call to be a ruler. Note how the 'fruitful vine' responded in Jotham's parable: *"Then said the trees unto the 'vine', Come thou, and reign over us.*

*"And the 'vine' said unto them, Should I leave my wine, which cheereth God and man, and go to be promoted over the trees? "* (Judg 9:12,13). The 'vine' refused to rule over others.

Jesus had the same attitude. He was the true 'vine', and He too refused to be made a king (see John 15:1). *'When Jesus therefore perceived that they would come and take him by force, to make him a king, he departed again into a mountain himself alone'*(John6:15).

Paul wrote to the Philippians, *"...Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus: "Who, being in the form of God, thought it not something to be grasped after to be equal with God:*

*"But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a slave, and was made in the likeness of men:*

*"And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.*

Therefore, *"Let nothing be done through strife or conceit; but in humility of mind let each think of others as better than themselves"* (Phil 2:3-8).

**2) Paul — An Example.** Being an apostle of Jesus brought no honor or praise. Paul described his leadership role in these words. *"Even unto this present hour we both hunger, and thirst, and are naked, and are buffeted, and have no certain dwelling-place; "And labor, working with our own hands: being reviled, we bless; being persecuted, we suffer it:*

*"Being defamed, we entreat: we are made as the filth of the world, and are the off-scouring of all things unto this day.*

*"I write not these things to shame you, but as my beloved sons I warn you"*(I Cor 4:11-14).

The Corinthian church and their leaders had a wrong understanding of their role in this present world. They thought they were to be like gentile rulers (see 1 Corinthians 4:8). Paul used stinging words of sarcasm to correct their wrong ideas.

**b. The Church Leader—A Burden- Bearer.** The Scripture uses the oxen (water buffalo) as the symbol of the church leader. *"For it is written in the law of Moses, Thou shall not muzzle the mouth of the ox that treadeth out the corn. Doth God take care for oxen?*

*"Or does he say this referring to we who are leaders in the church? For our sakes, no doubt, this is written..."* (1 Cor 9:9,10).

The oxen was chosen as the representation of the church leader because of its patient endurance in the labors of harvest. The steady, enduring strength and selflessness of the oxen has made it the most loved and revered of all animals used in agriculture. As such, the oxen illustrates the biblical role of the church leader — a burden- bearer, one who joyfully takes the responsibility to see that others are fed and cared for. It is obvious from Scripture that those who faithfully fulfill their leadership role bear many burdens like the oxen. Paul described his ministry in 2 Corinthians 11:23-28 in these graphic words:

*"...in labors more abundant, in stripes above measure, in prisons more frequent, in deaths oft.*

*"Of the Jews five times received I forty stripes save one.*

*"Thrice was I beaten with rods, once was I stoned, thrice I suffered shipwreck, a night and a day I have been in the deep;*

*"In journeyings often, in perils of waters, in perils of robbers, in perils by mine own countrymen, in perils by the heathen, in perils in the city, in perils in the wilderness, in perils in the sea, in perils among false brethren;*

*"In weariness and painfulness, in watchings often, in hunger and thirst, in fastings often, in cold and nakedness.*

*"Beside those things that are without, that which cometh upon me daily, the care of all the churches. "None but the sincere church leaders want these kind of burdens and responsibilities. Such are God's oxen.*

Seek out these kind of men and train them for leadership. Observe these biblical principles for training leaders:

*"...for then thou shall make thy way prosperous, and then thou shall have good success "*  
(Josh 1:8).

## **SECTION A2 TRAINING LEADERS TO... By Ralph Mahoney**

### **INDEX TO THIS SECTION**

#### **Preface**

#### **A2.1 - Wait On The Lord**

#### **A2.2 - Hear God's Voice**

#### **A2.3 - Obey God's Voice**

#### **A2.4 - Patiently Endure**

#### **A2.5 - Learn From Joseph's Life**

#### **A2.6 - Avoid Becoming A Casualty**

#### **A2.7 - "Flee Fornication!"**

#### **A2.8 - Reject Covetousness/Idolatry**

#### **A2.9 - Receive The Triple Anointing**

#### **PREFACE —CHAPTERS A2.1-A2.9**

This section contains the material which has proven most popular and in greatest demand from this author. It is in a sense a "Manifesto for the Christian leader." The first chapter outlines the preparations and principles by which an ordinary person can rise to an extraordinary leadership role. It is the author's own road map — drawn in retrospect of thirty-five years of active worldwide ministry.

The author has tried to carefully mark the detours, dangerous curves and collapsed bridges to prevent the church leader who starts the race from becoming a casualty of his own conquest. Those who follow the road map will keep the faith, and finish the course to receive the crown of life to cast at Jesus' feet.

In Section E4 the author attempts to outline the practical steps a spiritually developed leader must implement to cause God's will to be done on earth as it is in Heaven.

Chapters A2.1 - A2.9 of *The Shepherd's Staff* could be likened to our faith; Chapters E4.1-E4.5, to our works. "Faith without works is dead." The "works" of Chapters E4.1-E4.5 will complement the "faith" of Chapters A2.1-A2.9.

This material is thus dedicated to every church leader who wants to "...always abound in the work of the Lord." Anyone with any less aspiration than this will waste his time in reading it. For those sincere leaders willing to glorify Christ by life or by death — it will provide the encouragement, enlightenment and instruction needed to succeed.

## Chapter 1 Wait On The Lord

### Introduction

Are you called to be a church leader but fear your inadequacies will keep you from being successful? Do you believe you are too weak to be a strong leader? Perhaps you have already been thrust into a position of leadership and are facing frustration or even failure. If so, take heart. God has good news for you.

### A. GOD USES THE WEAK

*"He giveth power to the faint, and to those that have no might ...He increaseth strength "* (Isa 40:29).

When God calls a person to become a leader, He doesn't choose him on the basis of how clever, talented or educated he may be. In fact, these are things which God may have to modify (or sometimes destroy) before He can use us. The Bible says, *"I will destroy the wisdom of the wise and bring to nothing the understanding of the prudent"* (I Cor 1:19).

The Apostle Paul says, *"The foolishness of God is wiser than men; and the weakness of God is stronger than men. For ye see your calling, brethren, how that not many wise men after the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble, are called.*

*"But God hath chosen the foolish things of this world to confound the wise; and **God hath chosen the weak things** of the world to confound the things which are mighty; And... things which are despised, hath God chosen, yea, and things which are not, to bring to nought things that are (I Cor 1:25-28).*

This is what the Apostle Paul is teaching us: Through our weakness, our faltering, our failings, God reveals His wisdom. Through our helplessness, God displays His power. His strength is made perfect in our weakness.

A preacher friend of mine (Jack) shared a recent experience with me. While he ministered in Japan, the Lord was impressing him with this scripture:

*"Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings hast thou ordained strength **because of thine enemies**, that thou mightest still [defeat/silence] the enemy and the avenger" (Ps 8:2).*

#### 1. Enemies Defeated

He was teaching the church leaders of Japan that the Lord uses the praises of babes and sucklings to defeat His enemies (see Matthew 21:16).

It is as if God takes delight in humiliating Satan by using the weakest members of His creation (you and me — His babes, His children) to still (defeat) the enemy and the avenger.

As Jack was flying home from Japan the Lord gave him a vision. He saw a group of children leading a bunch of bleating, helpless sheep. The children were praising God and rejoicing in Him. As Jack meditated on this, the Lord spoke to him and said, **"I have chosen the symbol of lambs and sheep to represent my people because they are symbols of weakness and have no ability to lead or save themselves. But I am going to take a bunch of praising children who are leading a flock of bleating sheep and use them to utterly vanquish Satan, to defeat him at every turn of events."**

I believe Jack is right. God uses the weak to destroy His enemies. That means He can use you and me.

## **B. THE PEOPLE GOD CHOOSES**

I am often astonished by the people God chooses to do particular jobs.

### **1. Paul**

For example. He sent Paul to the uncultured pagan Gentiles. Paul had studied the Scriptures under Gamaliel (who was a great master teacher of the Pharisees). As a candidate for the Sanhedrin (a prestigious Jewish men's group who interpreted the religious laws in Israel) Paul had to memorize and quote (without error) the first five books of the Old Testament (called the Pentateuch). He was a Jew of notable background and achievement.

From a human viewpoint, no one could have been more suited to the task of evangelizing Jews than Paul. But to whom did God send Paul to minister? Not to the cultured Jews but to the ignorant and outcast peoples called Gentiles, The Gentiles had little appreciation for Paul's great learning and his mastery of Jewish law.

All of Paul's natural strength, all his education, cleverness and talent had to be set aside. God had to strip it all away by taking him to the desert of Arabia (like his forefather Moses) and there divest him of all those things he could have boasted in (see Galatians 1:17; Philippians 3:4-8). In that *"...howling waste wilderness, that land of deserts, pits, drought, and the shadow of death where no man traveled or lived..."* (Jer 2:6), Paul learned his success as a minister of Christ would only be through laying down *"all that was gain — to count it loss — to gain Christ"* (see Philippians 3:7,8).

He learned to proclaim the gospel *"...not in plausible words of man's wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power "* (I Cor 2:4).

To convince people that Jesus was their Savior, Paul counted more on the Spirit working miracles through him than he did on his ability as an orator or preacher (I Cor 10:4; 2Cor 10:10). We should do the same.

### **2. Peter**

Though Peter opened the door of faith to the Gentiles (Acts 10), he remained in Jerusalem among the most elite Jews of the Roman empire as "the apostle to the Jews" (see Galatians 2:8). What qualified Peter for this task? Certainly not great academic achievement or education. The Bible describes him as *"... unlearned and ignorant "*(Acts 4:13). He was but a simple fisherman, yet God qualified him for the job by the power of the Holy Spirit.

## **C. TURN WEAKNESS TO BLESSING**

*"He gives power to the faint, and to those who have no might... he increases strength"* (Isa 40:29).

The story is told of a blind man and a cripple who became inseparable friends. What contributed to their friendship?

The cripple could see perfectly but could not walk. The blind man had strong legs, but could not see. The cripple offered his seeing ability to the blind man in exchange for his mobility. The blind man would carry the cripple on his back. The cripple would instruct the blind man which way to walk and warn him of objects in the path that would cause him to stumble. Their mutual weaknesses and need brought them together to take advantage of each other's strength.

### **1. Depend More On God**

In the same way, our spiritual blindness and lameness should drive us to a prayerful dependent relationship with God, so His strength can take the place of our weakness.

*The hymn writer said it beautifully:*

*His strength is made perfect in weakness.*

*His power is not for the strong.*

*He giveth more grace*

*To the weak in the race.*

*His strength is made perfect in weakness.*

The personal weaknesses which make us aware of our lack of ability or power to be a leader should cause us to turn our heart to God in prayer (sometimes with fasting). If we respond in this way, we will find *"He gives power to the faint, and to those who have no might... he increases strength"* (Isa 40:29).

The attitude of dependence upon God attracts His attention and draws Him to us, and causes Him to gloriously manifest His power through us.

Our inadequacies are seen as blessings in disguise when they press us to dependence on Christ. However, if instead, we wallow in self-pity, or self-hatred, looking inside ourselves, searching for understanding of our problems, all we end up with is a feeling of inferiority.

## **2. Confess The Word**

What psychologists call "an inferiority complex" is usually a carnal preoccupation with ourselves (self-consciousness). It can result in a view of yourself which says, "I am no good! I am just a useless washout... God can never use me." This kind of self-view leads to total discouragement.

I heard Billy Graham (most famous evangelist in history) say, "God can never use a discouraged servant."

This is true! We must overcome such attitudes by the word of our confession (Rev 12:11). By saying about ourselves what the Bible says about us, we are made over-comers. The Bible says, *"I can do all things through Christ who strengthens [empowers, enables] me"* (Phil 4:13). *"Behold I give you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy; and nothing shall by any means hurt you"* (Luke 10:19).

*Through our God - -we shall do valiantly.*

*It is He - Who shall tread down our enemies.*

*We will sing - and shout the victory.*

*Christ is King! Christ is King!*

We must not confuse an inferiority complex with the scriptural meekness that God blesses. It is not the same thing.

## **3. Draw Near In Prayer**

The kind of weakness to which God responds is that which produces a sense of dependence on Him. When we pray, "I need you Oh God, and cannot get along without you" — God works on our behalf. We become like King David who prayed, *"... My soul longs for thee, Oh God"* (Ps 63:1; 84:2).

This sense of need contributes to the development of a healthy devotional and prayer life. That is the way it should work. Isn't it? In contrast to the above, an all pervasive selfconsciousness will paralyze us. It is a barrier which will prevent God's power from flowing through us. Renounce this kind of carnality and turn from it. Recognize that God is the strength of your life and you need not be afraid (Ps 27:1). He will show Himself strong on behalf of those who reverence, worship and depend on Him.

## **4. Exchange Your Strength For His Strength**

*"Even youth shall faint and be weary, young men shall utterly fail; but they that wait upon the Lord shall renew [exchange] their strength" (Isa 40:30,31).*

The key word in this verse is "renew" — which would better be translated "exchange." As we wait upon the Lord, He will take away our strength and replace it with His own.

It is not a matter of combining our strength with His, but a complete removal of our strength to put on His. God is saying, "If you are strong in yourself, I cannot use you.

If you can do it yourself, you do not need Me."

What does the Lord ask us to do before He will "exchange" strength with us?

**a. Acknowledge Your Need.** King David wrote, *"This poor man cried, and the Lord heard him and saved him out of all his troubles"* (Ps 34:6).

Asaph acknowledged his weakness and need of God in these stirring words: *"So foolish was I, and ignorant: I was like a beast before thee "* (Ps 73:22).

Both David and Asaph received God's strength because they were willing to humbly acknowledge their need and weakness. There is a powerful word of promise for all who will do the same thing.

*"When the **poor and needy** seek water, and there is none, and their tongue faileth for thirst, I, the Lord, will hear them; I, the God of Israel, will not forsake them.*

*"I will open rivers in high places, and fountains in the midst of the valleys; I will make the wilderness a pool of water, and the dry land springs of water.*

*"... That they may see, and know, and consider, and understand together, that the hand of the Lord hath done this... " (Isa 41:17-20).*

1) **Paul - An Example.** Paul found that if he would acknowledge areas of need and weakness in his life, it would result in the strength of God coming to him in more powerful measure. He writes, *"Lest I should be exalted above measure, through the abundance of the revelations, there was given unto me a thorn in the flesh, the messenger of Satan to buffet me.... For this thing I besought the Lord thrice, that it might depart from me "*(2Cor 12:7,8).

And how did the Lord answer Paul's petition for relief from this buffeting and weakness? *"My grace is sufficient for thee: for my strength is made perfect [complete] in [your] weakness "*(vs 9).

Now you can understand why Paul says:

*"Most gladly therefore, will I rather glory in my infirmities [weaknesses], **that the power of Christ may rest upon me.** Therefore, I take pleasure in infirmities, in reproaches, in necessities, in persecutions, in distresses for Christ's sake. **For, when I am weak, then I am strong"** (2Cor 12:9,10).*

This is the principle by which the power of the gospel works. When we're weak, and sense our great need of God, this makes us completely dependent on Him. This causes us to spend much time in prayer. The result? We are strong!

## **D. LEARN TO WAIT ON GOD**

*"They that wait upon the Lord will 'exchange' strength. They shall mount up with wings like eagles. They shall run and not be weary, they shall walk and not faint" (Isa40:31).*

### **1. Two Concepts**

What does the Bible mean when it says to "... wait upon the Lord?" There are two concepts involved in *"waiting upon the Lord."* These are:

- a. **Waiting For God's Time.** That is, take no major action until God shows you it is time to act.

- b. **Waiting In Prayer And Fasting.** To spend time prayerfully in God's presence in devotional exercises, sometimes involving fasting as well as prayer.

## **2. Waiting God's Time**

May I share my personal testimony with you? The Lord called me to His service in 1948, at age 16. I was born again and filled with the Holy Spirit but didn't understand the need to fully surrender my will and plans to the Lord.

The "deeper life" of Christian commitment had little appeal to me. I had already decided what I was going to do with my life and being a preacher had no part in that plan.

During the summer of 1948 the hand of the Lord came heavily upon my life.

Events took place which made me feel as if I were being wrestled to the floor to pray. Many times I lay prostrate on the floor with tears flooding down my face. I was crying out in prayer to God. In retrospect, I think many of those tears may have been tears of resistance to God's will. I wanted my way — and God wanted His way. This conflict of wills — my will against God's will — was creating an internal struggle to the death. The death of my will.

After three months of this intense spiritual conflict, I surrendered my life to do what God wanted. He wanted me to go into all the world and preach the gospel.

**a. Let's Go Now!** When I finally gave up to the will of God I said to the Lord, "I'll go where you want me to go dear Lord, I'll say what you want me to say, I'll be what you want me to be."

With this total surrender of my will to God's will I was ready to GO — RIGHT NOW!

There was no time to lose! (Or so I believed.) "Let's go God! Right now! I'm ready! The time is short! The Nuclear Age is here! The world is coming to an end! I'm ready to evangelize the whole world — by myself if necessary."

In my youthful enthusiasm, optimism, (and I should add, ignorance), I was expecting to be an instant "wonder world winner."

You see, my thinking was moulded somewhat by the theology of my church. Our church leaders emphasized the soon return of our Lord from Heaven. The Second Coming of Jesus was preached constantly in the pulpit. If not by the local preacher, then by the visiting evangelist. I expected Jesus to come very soon.

I remember a poll taken in the teenagers' Sunday School class the summer of 1948. We were asked, "How long will it be before the Lord comes again?" No one in that class of 50 teenagers believed the Lord could possibly delay His Coming beyond 1950. World War II had just ended. The Korean conflict was simmering. The threat of nuclear holocaust seemed imminent. I felt that whatever God was going to do had to be done right now. There was no time to wait. With a commission to evangelize the world, and only two years left in which to do it, I had to start **immediately!**

What was God's response to my great sense of urgency?

**b. Learn To Wait!** I had to learn that whatever my interpretation of world events, whatever my own sense of urgency — God acts in His own time, not mine. When you are "itching" to get into action, it is the hardest thing in the world to wait.

I was not prepared (trained) to go and preach. True, I had been called. But God's **call** and God's **sending** are two different things. I didn't know it at the time but God wasn't a bit worried over the world situation in 1948. I was, but He wasn't. He had planned my training and preparation. All my anxiety and impatience didn't cause Him to speed up His schedule by a single minute.

I did not realize it at the time but I was straining to enter the battle and fight in my own strength. God knew I would have been destroyed if I had gone forth unprepared. So, He made me wait until I gained training and experience. Through those years of waiting on the Lord, I learned that I must never “...go beyond the word of the Lord my God to do less or *more*” (Num 22:18).

**c. God Controls The Time.** The Bible says, “...When the fullness of time was come. God sent forth his Son...” (Gal 4:4). God controls the times and seasons. He had a time to send Jesus into the world. He has a time for all things. Wait for God's time. Don't get ahead and don't lag behind. Wait upon the Lord. He will reveal His time to you.

The times and seasons are in the Father's own power (Acts 1:7). Let us learn to wait patiently on Him. He will reveal the times and seasons to us when we need to know them.

### 3. Waiting In Prayer And Fasting

*“Let not them that wait upon thee ...be ashamed ...let not those that seek thee be confounded...”* (Ps 69:6).

If we are to “exchange” our limited strength for His unlimited power, we must establish a consistent daily devotional habit. Disciplining oneself to times of regular prayer (and fasting) is one of the most difficult things for most church leaders to do. The pressure of daily schedules and activities tend to rob us of these essential devotional times with the Lord.

a. **How Do Daily Devotional Times Help?** Try this experiment. Fill a pitcher right to the top brim with water. Fill it so full another drop would make it run over. Then start dropping in stones about the size of your hand. What happens? With every stone that goes in the pitcher, a like amount of water overflows and spills out from the pitcher. This is the way we exchange our strength for God's. We are filled with the water of our own strength. As we spend time in prayer. God begins dropping in the stones of His strength and power. These stones of grace displace the water of negative unbelieving attitudes, stones of dependence on the Lord displace the stagnant water of “I can do it without God” attitudes. His divine enablements fill our life, and our powerlessness is replaced with His strength.

How can I cause God's strength to fill my life? It is a natural-supernatural process. If you spend daily time in prayer it will be like the growing-up process. A child does not grow up and become strong by thinking about it or trying to force himself to grow up. It is a natural process that happens as a result of proper diet and exercise.

In the same way, if a church leader will spend time each day reading the Bible and praying, this spiritual nutrition will promote the growth of God's strength in his life. The exchange of your strength for His, will take place gradually and consistently.

b. **How Should I Conduct My Devotional Time?** The following outline was adapted from a series of messages on the subject, “Renewing The Devotional Habit.” I have found this most helpful in my devotional times.

- 1) **Confess Sin.** Ask the Lord to bring any unconfessed sins to your mind. Acknowledge these sins to God and ask for and receive His forgiveness and cleansing (I Jn 1:9,10).
- 2) **Praise God.** Next, take time to give thanks and praise to God for Who He is and for what He has done (Ps 100).
- 3) **Surrender The Day To God.** Tell God how much you need His direction and guidance. Ask for His guidance and obey any instructions you feel God gives you in prayer.

- 4) **Pray For Family, Church, All Believers.** Pray for your spouse, children and family members. Pray for your church members and leaders. Pray for believers in other parts of the world. Pray for the orphans and widows (those without family).
  - 5) **Pray For Leaders, Missionaries, Evangelism.** Pray for the leaders of your nation. Pray for your spiritual leaders. Pray for the tribes and language groups in your part of the world who still need the gospel. Pray for the missionaries and for the evangelization of other nations.
  - 6) **Pray In Other Tongues.** In all this praying — let the Holy Spirit's action come upon you and pray in other tongues (languages) and pray for the interpretation of your prayers in other tongues (I Cor 14:13,14).
  - 7) **Write Down What The Lord Gives You And Do It!** Write down impressions you feel came to you from the Lord during your prayer time. Take obedient action in response to anything God gives you in prayer.
- c. **How Do Trials Help Us?** Peter warned us, *"...think it not strange concerning the fiery trial which is to test you, as though some strange thing happened unto you"* (I Pet 4:12). An elderly minister friend of mine told me some years ago, "Brother Ralph, when you try to go **on** with God, the world will oppose you. When you try to go **deeper** in God, your fleshly nature will resist you. When you try to go up **higher** in God, the demonic principalities and powers of the air will fight you."
- Nowhere do we hit resistance like we do when we decide to establish a daily devotional time in which to wait on the Lord. When you get serious about seeking the face of God, expect opposition and trials. They often come.
- It is comforting to know that even through trials and tribulation, *"God works all things together for good to them that love the Lord, to them who are called according to his purpose"* (Rom 8:28 rsv).
- As we wait on God, He turns on the fire of trials, tests and temptations, and our lives heat up. When we have reached the "boiling point," two things result:
- 1) **Sin And Self Are Purged Away.**
  - 2) **God's Power Begins Working In Us.**
- God's power begins working in us and through us with exciting supernatural consequences. When you place a cooking pot of water over fire, the water will eventually boil. You cannot hasten or prevent the boiling by watching the water, by stirring it constantly or by ignoring it. Whatever you do, the water will boil when it reaches the boiling temperature. The boiling is the result of the application of heat to the water, not the result of some action of the water upon itself. In the same way, when we go through the fire of affliction or tribulation, things happen inside us — with no effort on our part. They are the by-product of God's heat applied to the water of human nature. We experience inner change. Our motives are purified. Our desire to sin is burned away. *"Whoever has suffered in the flesh has ceased from sin"* (1 Pet 4:1). Yes, it is true, *"...they that wait [for His appointed time with prayer and fasting] upon the Lord will exchange their strength for his."*

## Chapter 2 Hear God's Voice

### Introduction

Is God still speaking today? Is it possible to hear the voice of God? Christian leaders are confused about this issue.

Some believe that God can guide us and give direction when we need it. Others say God only speaks to us by what we read in the Bible. I believe that God still speaks to us today by His Holy Spirit just as He did in Bible times. What do you believe?

The Pseudepigrapha tells about a sect of the Pharisees that came into existence 800 years (or more) before Christ. This sect taught that all God would ever say was already said through the writings of Moses. Any subsequent prophetic voice or writing was invalid. They accepted only the first five books of the Bible. Nothing more!

It seems many church leaders believe the same doctrine today (with some modification). For example, modern-day "theological Pharisees" teach that God only speaks to us now by what is written in the Bible. Beyond that, God is not speaking anymore.

While the Bible is a finished book, and no one should dare add anything to the Canon of Scripture, the idea that we now serve a DUMB GOD (one who cannot speak) is a great theological travesty. Many will die to defend what God said (past centuries) but "... *refuse him that speaketh [presently in our day and time] from heaven* " (Heb 12:25).

Seven times we are admonished, ' *He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith [present tense] unto the churches* "(Rev 2:7; 3:22).

## A. THE NEED TO HEAR

Jesus said, "Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that **proceedeth** out of the mouth of God" (Matt 4:4). This word "**proceedeth**" speaks of a presentcontinuing function. That means something that happened in the past, is happening in the present, and will happen in the future.

This verse could be translated, ' *Man... lives... by every word that **has been spoken and continues to be spoken by the mouth of God.*** "God, Who spoke in ages past, is speaking in the present and will continue to speak in the future. GOD IS NOT A DUMB GOD!

This is not to say the Bible is still being written and we need to add to it. I do NOT believe that.

The Bible does teach us however, that God wants a people to " *dwell in, and walk in*" (2Cor 6:16), "*living epistles, known and read by mankind*" (2Cor 3:2,3). Oh, how we need to hear His voice! We can only live (have the life and blessing of the Lord in our churches today) by hearing every word that continues to proceed from God's mouth to our hearts.

### 1. To Know God's Will

Every church leader faces this question: What does God expect me to do, and what am I to leave up to God to do? Where does my responsibility end and God's begin? On the one hand, the Scripture says, "*Not by might, nor by power, but by my Spirit, says the Lord*" (Zech 4:6).

Some have suggested this teaches God will do it all by His Spirit and we need do nothing. On the other hand, Jesus said, "*That servant who knew his Lord's will, ...neither **did** according to his will, shall be beaten with many stripes*" (Luke 12:47). This clearly teaches that God holds His servants responsible to know His will and to take action to implement (do) the will of God.

How do we reconcile this tension between God's sovereignty and the church leader's responsibility to implement the will of God?

We can easily resolve this dilemma by examining Jesus' words again, "*That servant **who knew his Lord's will...** neither did according to his will, shall be beaten with **many stripes...***" (Luke 12:47). Jesus contrasts this with the servant that knew **not** his Lord's will. That servant

*“shall be beaten with few stripes”* (vs 48). Both ways you get a beating. If you **know** — and don't do, and if you **don't know** — and don't do.

God wants church leaders who **know** and **do** their Lord's will. The will of God establishes the limits of our responsibility. If we don't know His will, we will be judged less harshly, though we will still be judged. To do the will of God we **must know His will**. To know His will — **we must hear His voice**. It's that simple!

**a. A Personal Testimony.** When I was being trained as an evangelist, I used to preach to nearly everyone I met, hoping to find someone who would accept Jesus Christ as their Savior. I had read in one of my books, and it taught me to use the following outline. By giving the sinner these four points, I might lead someone to Christ.

- You are a sinner (Rom 3:23).
- The penalty of sin is eternal hell (Rom 6:23).
- Jesus bore your penalty for sin on the cross (I Pet 2:24).
- Receive Jesus and you will be saved (John 1:12).

Let me assure you, all the above is true. This is all people need to know to be saved. If they believe this with all their heart, they are born from above by the regenerating power of the Holy Spirit.

But not one person I talked to was born again during that whole summer. Not one wanted to receive Jesus. What was I doing wrong?

I was relying on a formula, a method, instead of the leading of the Holy Spirit. I was not hearing the Lord's voice of direction and my efforts were fruitless.

Some years later, observing Brother Heeley lead scores of souls to Christ, I found out how wrong

I had been in my approach to soul-winning. Everywhere Brother Heeley went he led people to Christ.

When Brother Heeley needed a haircut he would pray, "Lord, lead me to a barber that needs You and **is ready** to receive You." He would get in his car and drive by several barber shops. When he sensed that inward feeling from the Spirit that he had found the right one, he would go into that shop, fully expecting to lead the barber to Christ. He seldom failed.

When Brother Heeley would put air in his bicycle tire, or go to the market for his wife, it was always the same. He would pray for the direction of the Holy Spirit — and then listen for God's voice of gentle direction. He would always find sinners who were ready to receive a Savior as he followed the Spirit's leading.

I asked him one day, "What method do you use when you talk to people. Brother Heeley?" "I don't have one," he replied. "I listen for the voice of the Spirit to direct me in what to say to people. I never say the same thing twice. The Lord helps me to discover their need and talk to them about it in a loving, concerned way that lets them know I care and God cares."

Brother Heeley was born and raised in Canada but never heard the gospel until he was past 40 years of age. He was led to Christ by an itinerant soul-winner who demonstrated a loving concern for him. Brother Heeley does what the man who led him to Christ did. He itinerates all over Canada, showing loving concern for people and leading them to Christ. His secret? He hears and obeys God's voice.

I've tried to emulate Brother Heeley since I met him. I have found God will lead you if you desire He do so. Listen for God's voice and He will gently lead you to people who need salvation and are ready to receive a Savior.

Not only in soul-winning, but in every area of our ministry, we need to hear God's voice. What then hinders us?

## **B. HINDRANCES TO HEARING**

### **1. Hearts Not Perfect Before God**

*"For the eyes of the Lord search back and forth across the whole earth, looking for people whose **hearts** are perfect toward him, so that he can show his great power in helping them "* (2Chr 16:9 tib).

The people in Bible times understood the heart to be the seat of: 1) the emotions or **affections**, 2) the **motives**, and 3) the **intentions** of the person. God is vitally concerned with these things.

a. **Worldly Affections.** If our **affections** are set on things on the earth rather than things in Heaven, this offends God (I Jn 2:15). The Bible tells us to love God with all our heart, soul, mind and strength (Matt 22:37).

b. **Impure Motives.** If our **motives** (or motivations) are impure like the prophet Baalam (Numbers 23) then God will severely judge us. Baalam bartered God-given miraculous gifts for money, fame and prestige.

c. **Wrong Intentions.** Ananias and Sapphira (Acts 5) were pretending to give all their money to the work of the Lord, but were really keeping back much of it for themselves. Because their intent was wrong, God killed them.

Oh! how we need to guard our **affections, motives and intentions** to make sure they are pure. God knows our heart, doesn't He?

*"For man looketh on the outward appearance, but the Lord looketh on the **heart**"* (ISam 16:7). We can't hide these things from the Lord. And if we do not keep our hearts right in His sight, we will not hear God's voice.

### **2. Hardness Of Heart**

*"Today, if you want to hear his voice, do not **harden your hearts** "* (Heb 4:7). When I and my team go somewhere to preach the gospel, we often fast and pray for God to empower us so we will be able to heal and bless the people. We often set aside a day for fasting and prayer during these times.

It is our custom to select three mature Christian couples (husbands and wives) and form them into a prayer team. We may have five or six prayer teams ministering to the people during the day of fasting and prayer.

The prayer team place their chairs in a circle. Those coming to be prayed for sit in the middle of this circle.

We encourage these teams to pray in the Spirit (in other tongues — I Cor 14:13,14) and expect the Holy Spirit to give them supernatural help for the people who are coming for prayer.

**a. Unforgiveness Stops God's Voice.** A lady came to the prayer circle my wife and I were part of. She had severe arthritis which was causing her a lot of pain in her back and hands. Her fingers were so curled over with arthritis, she couldn't straighten them out.

She said the Lord had stopped talking to her. She had not heard the voice of the Lord in over eight months.

As the team began praying in the Spirit, a picture started forming in my mind of a corn field from which the harvest had been taken. The ground was hard and dry and the cornstalks withered. As I pondered whether this picture had meaning to the sister's need, I felt the Holy Spirit began to say to me, "This is a picture of this sister's heart. It is hard and dry."

I prayed, "Why Lord?" The Spirit responded, "Her husband has been mistreating her and she hasn't forgiven him. Her failure to forgive has caused this hardness of heart. And because she has not forgiven him, she has not been forgiven. All this has combined to cause tremendous frustration in her heart. This is causing the arthritis which afflicts her."

I am not always sure that I am hearing the voice of the Lord when something like this happens. So, to test out whether it was the Holy Spirit or my own imagination, I told the sister about the picture in my head (vision). I related to her what I thought the Lord had said to me about her situation. Then I asked her, "Is any of this true?" She broke down in tears and replied, "Yes,

Brother Ralph, it is all true."

**b. Forgiveness Brings A Return Of God's Voice.** The compassion of the Lord filled my heart for this dear sister. With tears streaming down my face I said, "Sister, Jesus loves you very much and wants to heal you and wants to speak to you. Verbalize your forgiveness. Just speak out and say, 'I forgive my husband all the evil things he has done to hurt me.' When you do that the Lord will heal you, and your heart will be softened. When you have a tender heart (instead of a hard heart) the Lord will speak to you again."

She did as I suggested and within three minutes all the arthritis was gone. The stiffness and pain in her back was healed. Her finger joints came free and she could bend her fingers like any normal person.

Several days later she told me through tears of joy, "Brother Ralph, the Lord has been talking to me again. He is so good!" I found out later, she was a church leader of a fine church.

This story illustrates how important it is to have our heart right with God. A hard heart, a calloused heart, an unbelieving heart, and scores of other "heart conditions" can prevent us from hearing God's voice.

### 3. An Unregenerate Condition

I have traveled in more than fifty nations preaching the gospel. One of the big problems I encounter as I travel is unregenerate church leaders, clergymen who have never been born again of the Spirit of God. Is it any wonder they do not hear God's voice? Over 200 years ago, John Wesley, the founder of one of the greatest revival movements in the world, was sailing back to England from missionary service in the Georgia colony. He had been there trying to relieve some of the inhumane treatment of prisoners.

On the sailing ship, Moravian missionaries from Bavaria engaged John Wesley in conversation. "John Wesley, are you born again?"

"I'm an ordained Anglican clergyman," he responded.

"That is not what we asked you, John. Are you born again of the Spirit of God?"

John replied, "I've been working with prisoners, helping the poor and doing all kinds of good deeds since I graduated from seminary." (John was trying to avoid this "Heaven or Hell" issue.)

The Moravians kept pressing him. "John Wesley! Jesus said, 'ye must be born again.'" Confronted over and over on this question, John Wesley spent a great deal of the remainder of the voyage re-reading his New Testament. He encountered verses like *"The Spirit himself beareth witness with our spirit that we are the children of God"* (Rom8:16). He pondered, "What is Paul talking about? *"The spirit hears witness with our spirit...."* What does that mean?"

He read 1 John 5:10, *"He that believeth on the Son of God hath the witness in himself."* He mused, "I haven't experienced any witness in my heart like John talks about.

Am I born again?"

The more he talked to the Moravians and read his New Testament, the more he became convinced that he did not have "saving faith".

**a. Saving Faith Or Intellectual Agreement.** One day he read James 2:19, "The demons also believe and tremble." John Wesley began to see there was a difference between "saving faith" and intellectual agreement with the historical facts recorded in the Bible about Jesus. The demons believe the facts but do not have saving faith.

Convinced that his church, his seminary professors and his missionary board had let him down by not making certain he had been born again of the Spirit of God — John began his search for spiritual reality.

A short time after landing back in England, John went into a little nondescript London mission one night to hear the preacher. Sitting there listening to the gospel presented with clarity and simplicity Wesley later testified, "My heart was strangely warmed." He left the mission that night with a peace that passes understanding — joy unspeakable and full of glory!

Finally he knew the joy of being born again of the Spirit. He now knew what Paul, John and James were talking about. He finally knew the difference between spiritual reality and intellectual agreement with the gospel. He spent the remaining years of his ministry showing people and priests how essential it is to know you are born again.

**b. You Can Know You Are Saved.** What about you? Do you know you've been born again? You can know! Why don't you ask the Lord Jesus to come into your heart?

Pray this simple prayer: *Lord Jesus! I confess You are my Lord. I believe You bore my sins to Calvary's cross to save me from sin. I believe You rose from the dead and are enthroned at the Father's right hand in Heaven.*

*I trust You and Your blood alone to be the full payment for my sins. I renounce and turn from my sins. I receive Your Holy Spirit to bear witness with my spirit that I am a child of God. All this I ask in the Name of my Lord Jesus Christ. AMEN!*

If you prayed that prayer sincerely, Jesus has come into your heart. Now go and tell someone immediately — "I have received Jesus as my Lord and Savior and I know, I know, I know I am saved and on my way to Heaven."

The Bible says, *"For if you tell others with your mouth that Jesus Christ is your Lord, and believe in your heart that God has raised him from the dead, you will be saved. For it is by believing in his heart that a man becomes right with God; and with his mouth he tells others of his faith, confirming his salvation"* (Rom 10:9,10 tib).

Now that you are born again — and you know that you are — you are a candidate for the Lord to start speaking to you. You can hear His voice. Jesus said, *"My sheep hear my voice, and I know them and they follow me"* (John 10:27).

When Jesus comes into your heart He cleanses it and sweeps it free from sin and darkness, and takes away the hard heart and gives you a soft and tender heart of flesh so you can hear His voice. *"Your filthiness will be washed away... . And I will give you a new heart— I will give you new and right desires — and put a new spirit within you. I will take out your stony hearts of sin and give you new hearts of love. And I will put my Spirit within you so that you obey my laws and do whatever I command"* (Eze 36:25-27 tlb).

#### **4. Disobedience Stops God's Voice**

Brother Judson Cornwall said he was fervently praying, asking the Lord to speak to him. The Lord finally said, "Judson, why should I speak to you again, when you haven't obeyed what I told you the last time I spoke to you?" Brother Cornwall got right up and did what the Lord had previously told him to. Then he started hearing the Lord's voice again.

*"So then faith comes by hearing the word of God "* (Rom 10:17).

Faith can be defined as **"Obedient action to what God says."** To hear God's voice doesn't mean just to hear with your ears. It means to respond obediently to what He said.

When my son was about nine years old I spoke to him and said, "Son, take this sack of garbage to the waste bin." He said, "OK, Dad!" Thirty minutes later I came back and the garbage was still there. Did he **hear** me? Not in the biblical sense. Until he obeyed me, he had not **heard** me. I called my son back in and showed him the "board of education" which I was getting ready to apply to his "seat of learning." Then he **heard** me, and took out the garbage.

Faith comes by **hearing**... the word of God — that is, hearing and obediently responding to what God has said.

**a. Pride Prevents Obedience.** A great hindrance to our obedient response is PRIDE. I heard Oral Roberts say, "Every time I've prepared to pray for the sick, I've had to hang my pride on the cross again — because I know that only a few of those I pray for will be healed."

Despite doubters, scoffers and critical newspaper reporters, Oral Roberts persevered through humiliation to do what he heard God telling him to do. Because of his faithfulness to an unpopular calling, thousands have been healed and the ministry of healing is practiced more widely all the time.

Many of us have been held back from doing what God is saying to us because we fear what others will think of us if we obey the Lord. "*The fear of man bringeth a snare*" (Prov 29:25). The "fear of man" is just another expression of pride. Basically, we don't do what we know God wants us to do because of PRIDE.

Our carnal mind thinks, "If we try what God is saying and fail, what will the people think? My minister friends won't understand me. My denomination will not agree with what God is telling me to do."

All these thoughts have their root in the **fear of man** — PRIDE! Many who desire to do the will of God are held back by fear of man.

I am often asked, "Brother Ralph, how can you be sure God is speaking to you?" I reply, "I can't always be sure. Often I am not sure. I test it out. I try it. I check out the facts with others it might involve.

"The Bible says '*prove all things*' (I Ths 5:21). The only way you can prove something is to try it. I often fail in the trying — but one of the elements of faith is risk. You have to take the risk of becoming a fool for Christ's sake."

Don't let pride paralyze you. Try to do what you feel God wants you to do. Though you may have some failures — there will be some successes too. Take the risk. Step out on faith and attempt great things for God.

**b. Preconceptions Hinder Obedience.** One of the most interesting stories in the Bible is in 2 Kings Chapter 5. It vividly illustrates how our preconceptions prevent us from hearing and obeying God's voice.

**1) Naaman Almost Misses A Blessing.** Naaman was a Syrian general whose Israeli housemaid was a captive from war. Naaman had the incurable disease of leprosy. His maid told him about a prophet in Israel named Elisha who had power from God to heal people.

Through diplomatic channels, Naaman contacted the king of Israel and made arrangements to visit Elisha. When Naaman arrived at Elisha's modest home, the prophet sent out his servant to tell General Naaman what God said he must do. "*Go wash in the Jordan River seven times, and you will be healed of every trace of your leprosy*" (vs 10).

Naaman was angry and stalked away. "Look!" he said, "**I thought** the prophet would have the common courtesy to come out and see me. **I thought** he would call on the Name of the Lord his God, and wave his mantle over the leprosy and I would be healed."

(Note his preconception of how he would be healed.)

"If it's rivers I need — I'll go back to Syria to wash in the crystal waters of Abana River or Pharpar River —not down in that muddy Jordan River." With that he left in a rage.

One of his servants pled with him. "Sir! If the prophet had asked you to do some great or difficult thing you would have. So why don't you **obey** (key word) when he has asked you to just go wash and be cured?"

Finally persuaded, Naaman went down to the Jordan River and dipped seven times as the prophet had told him. When he obeyed, his flesh became as healthy as a little child's. Naaman was completely healed.

Naaman almost missed receiving the blessing he sought. Why? Because of a preconceived idea of how God would heal him. His preconception and pride prevented his obedience.

You see, a preconception is rooted in pride. It is in effect a statement that "I know everything. I can conceive things before they happen — as they will happen" (a deific quality).

When things do not happen as we preconceive they will — it undermines our deific (pride-filled) image of ourselves, and we, like Naaman, stalk away angry and resentful because God didn't conform to our preconception of how He would do it.

**2) God's Pattern For Your Life.** Our theology (a preconception about God) often comes into conflict with the Spirit's guidance in our life — and when it does, we face the grave danger of missing the will of God.

When God began to impress me to become an itinerant preacher I resisted with adamant protest. For eleven years I had been starting new churches and pasturing them. Now God was telling me to do something that would mean giving up pastoring local churches.

I argued, "Lord, it isn't scriptural. Everything You do, or will ever do, You **must** do through a local church." That was my theology at the time. I protested to God, "This idea of itinerant preaching isn't according to the pattern of the Book of Acts. I'm supposed to do all things according to the pattern!" (Hebrews 8:5 was a favorite text of mine.)

One Sunday morning as I was walking to a meeting to preach, the Lord spoke to me: "Why don't you read the rest of the verse?" I knew what the Lord meant. Read the rest of Hebrews 8:5.

"Lord, why should I read the rest of the verse? I have read it hundreds of times. I have preached from it scores of times. Lord, I know that verse backwards and forwards. Why should I read the rest of the verse?"

The insistent voice of the Lord inside kept pressing, "Read the rest of the verse." I opened my Bible and read, "*See saith he, that thou make all things according to the pattern **showed to thee in the mount***" (Heb 8:5b). Three words struck me like dynamite:

**"Showed to thee."**

"Do ALL things according to the pattern **showed to thee.**"

My theology was based on a pattern showed to Moses, to David, to the early Church — but God was saying:

"You've got to do it the way I show you. Noah built the ark because that was My pattern for Noah. Moses built a tabernacle because that was My pattern for Moses. Solomon built a temple because I told him to. Peter, Paul, James and John all did what I told them. That was the pattern for their lives.

"You must do what I tell you to do, in the way I tell you to do it. That will be My pattern for **your** life."

Finally I understood. I had to hear and obey God's voice. I couldn't do things just because "it has always been done this way." I had to obey God.

And, my friend, that is still the issue, isn't it? God has a plan for each of us. The ministry He gave Billy Graham is like that of John the Baptist of whom the Scripture testifies: *"John didn't do miracles"* (Jo1m 10:41). Kenneth Hagin and Oral Roberts are more like Stephen, who *"...did great wonders and miracles among the people "* (Acts 6:8). All three of these great evangelists are doing what God told them to do — yet each is very different from the other. Each of us must hear and obey God's voice. That is what will distinguish you from the thousands who will not. Most will not hear and obey God's voice. You must!

Do not let your traditions keep you from doing what God says. Hear and obey the voice of God. Some will despise, oppose and criticize you. Others will doubt and assail you. Your pride will suffer. But whatever! Do the will of God!

**3) Experience On Corn Island.** In 1962 I was part of a two-man effort to evangelize a little island off the east coast of Nicaragua. A convert from meetings I conducted three years previously had preceded us to this island and started a church. In the traditional way of evangelists, I had preached fervently for several nights — without seeing one person converted to Christ. My co-evangelist and I were so frustrated and desperate, we announced a prayer meeting for four o'clock each morning. In this way, we could pray with the members before they went out on the early morning fishing and fruit gathering expeditions.

We expected ten or twelve church members to come. To our amazement, the little church building was packed with about 100 people (as many as we had seen in any of the evening meetings). Now everyone knows you do not have evangelistic crusades at 4 a.m. — but this is what the meeting turned into. God was going to shatter my preconceptions about the way He worked and teach me a lesson about hearing and obeying His voice.

We started the prayer time with a little chorus:

*Sweep over my soul, sweep over my soul.*

*Sweet Spirit, sweep over my soul.*

*My rest is complete, as I sit at His feet.*

*Sweet Spirit, sweep over my soul.*